

**M.A. MASS COMMUNICATION
3rd SEMESTER**

MSM-523-A

REPORTING



**Centre for Distance and Online
Education
Guru Jambheshwar University of Science &
Technology, HISAR-125001**



CONTENTS

Sr. No.	TOPIC	Page No.
1	CONCEPT, MEANING & DEFINITIONS OF NEWS: AN OVERVIEW	3
2	CONCEPT, MEANING & DEFINITIONS OF NEWS: AN OVERVIEW	18
3	TYPES OF NEWS	30
4	NEWS AND VIEWS	45
5	METHODS & TECHNIQUES OF NEWS GATHERING	59
6	STRUCTURE OF NEWS REPORT	73
7	TECHNIQUES OF NEWS WRITING	86
8	TYPES OF REPORTING: I	101
9	TYPES OF REPORTING: II	114
10	TYPES OF REPORTING: III	128
11	TYPES OF REPORTING: IV	140
12	TYPES OF REPORTING: V	152
13	NEWS ANALYSIS REPORTING	164
14	REVIEW & CRITICISM: I	184
15	REVIEW & CRITICISM: II	206
16	PARTICIPATORY JOURNALISM	220
17	JOURNALISM AND DEMOCRACY	243



SUBJECT: REPORTING	
COURSE CODE: MSM-523 A	
LESSON NO.: 1	AUTHOR: DR MANOJ DAYAL
CONCEPT, MEANING & DEFINITIONS OF NEWS: AN OVERVIEW	

STRUCTURE

- 1.0 Learning Objectives
- 1.1 Introduction
- 1.2 Concept of News
 - 1.2.1 Meaning of News
 - 1.2.2 Definitions of News
 - 1.2.3 Overview of News
- 1.3 Check Your Progress
- 1.4 Summary
- 1.5 Keywords
- 1.6 Self-Assessment Test
- 1.7 Answers to Check Your Progress
- 1.8 References/Suggested Readings

1.0 LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this lesson you will be able to:

- To understand the concept of news.
- To explain the meaning of news.
- To throw light on the definitions of news.
- To describe the overview of news.

1.1 INTRODUCTION



Human beings are always keen to know something new, rare, unique, exceptional, matchless, interesting, etc. They are curious and inquisitive by nature. They are always looking for information about anything and everything that interests and attracts them. This has been over the ages gone by and time immemorial. Most of the medium of mass communication have by and large been instrumental in satisfying the curiosities of human beings. Newspapers, magazines, books, internet, radio, television and several other mass media have been endeavouring to gather information and disseminate them to the people looking for such information. The most important need that media fulfill is of providing news—latest news from the place one is located, news of region, news of nation and of course of the world. It is hence clear that the most important input that anyone is looking from a mass medium. But what is meant by news? For that we must understand the concept, meaning, definitions and an overview of news.

1.2 CONCEPT OF NEWS

Broadly speaking, news is anything that report of an event that has just taken place. News is details of information, description, depiction, delineation, narration statement and occurrence which is recent new, fresh or unknown.

In accordance with the words of George Hough of the University of Georgia, U.S.A., "News is both a product and point of view. As a product, news is gathered processed, packaged and sold by newspapers, news services, news magazines, radio, television, cable stations and networks." George Hough again adds and remarks, "News is also whatever people think. What a reporter or an editor finds interesting or exciting or important for the people. "Hence, news is something that interests, excites or concerns people. News only interests people but at times excites and at times concerns. This is simple because it may be a mishap or an accident or a tragedy or a natural calamity. News creates good times, excellent times, great times. It may create bad times, difficult times or indifferent times.

1.2.1 MEANING OF NEWS

When you ask ten newspersons to tell you the meaning of a news, you are most likely to get eleven meanings of news. News is in fact one of the most known items in today's world. All those who understand a language and who have access to a mass media, understands the meaning of a news. As a



matter of fact, the concept of news was born when man was born and shall survive as long as man survives. Hence, it must have existed even before the beginning of the era of mass media. You may find relics of a old system in a remote of the remotest village where people exchange local news during market hours just by interacting with each other. When two brothers meet after sometime, they often share useful information which may be described as personal news. Similarly, when two friends or relatives write letter to each other it may be described as news by them and for them. This type of news sharing has been there since time immemorial. We all agree to the point that death makes an important news. And the importance of this news relates to the importance of the person. Pranab Mukherjee, veteran congress leader and former President of the Republic of India died on August 31 at the age of 84. It was a big news. This news was important due to the importance of Pranab Da. But even an ordinary death of a person will make news at least for those who know him and are related to him. It may not be published in a newspaper or any other media, but it will be definitely a news for some people. Hence, we may conclude here that the concept of news in our society is as old as the recognition of death as an event and its communication to those whom the event would affect.

Before the advent of mass media, news was communicated by word of mouth. Though the concept of news is as old as mankind, yet the word “News” is relatively recent in its origin. In English, it appeared as “news” in 1423, “new yes” in 1485 and evolved to “newes” in 1523. But it was only after 1550 that it became “news”.

The meaning of news is often described as the representations of the four directions—North, East, West and South. News may come from any of these directions. However, we have ten directions and as we see every day all events do not make news. Only relevant, concerning, important and interesting events make news. Moreover, an event itself is not news—it becomes news if and only if its account is available. Thus Sushant Singh Rajput’s death made a big news several weeks after the events. History is also an account of several case studies and important events. But it pertains primarily to the past events. News is nothing but timely and current history. Today’s newspapers will be the source material for the historians of tomorrow as today’s historians consult newspapers of yesterdays in the archives. What is occurring today may be recorded in the history. But its account which newspapers or media give now is news because of its news worthiness.



Not only events but opinions also make news. Opinion of the Indian Prime Minister Narendra Modi about world peace and terrorism makes news of international order. The opinion of the man on the street about the Union Budget or about their favourite leaders or stars makes news. Coverage and analysis of Indian Prime Minister or President in the foreign newspapers will make important news in India. What the UK Press published about the Lok Sabha elections in India may be hot news for the Indian newspapers. What the US Press wrote about Abhishek-Aishwarya marriage was news for the Indian newspapers.

Hence, the other meaning of news may like this, “News is an account of recent event or opinion which is important or interesting or concerning.”

Importance, interest and concern are the three factors that depicts a lot of varieties and hence explain why an event is newsworthy for one newspaper or broadcasting stations and not for many other newspapers and radio or TV networks. Why the press in India publishes more about UK or US than our own villages? Why one news item becomes an international news while the other is suitable only for a local or regional newspaper?

1.2.2 DEFINITIONS OF NEWS

We all are aware of the famous cliché, “When a dog bites a man, it is not a news. But when a man bites a dog, it is news.”

There are several other definitions of news:

“News is something revealed.”

“News is something which somebody wants suppressed.”

“News is anything, you did not know yesterday.”

“News is any event, idea or opinion that is timely, that interests or affects a large number of people in a community and that is capable of being understood by them.”



“News is what the newspaper prints and radio broadcasts.” News is a compilation of facts and events of current interest or importance to the readers of the newspaper printing it.”

“Sex, money, crime—that is news.”

“News is anything and everything interesting about life and materials in all their manifestation.”

What is new is news.”

“News is anything out of the ordinary.”

“News is anything published in a newspaper which interests large number of people.”

“News is what newspaper people make.”

“Good news is not news.”

“News is anything a big shot said.”

“News and truth are not the same thing.”

“The function of news is to signal an event.”

“News is any recent ,up to date information of an event received from the different directions.”

“News is history in a hurry.”

“News is the honest and unbiased and complete account of events of interest and concern to the public.”

“News may be defined as any accurate fact or idea that will interest a large number of readers.”

“News is anything timely that is interesting and significant to the readers in respect of their personal affairs or their relation to the society, and the best news is that which possesses the greatest degree of this interest and significance for the greatest number.”



News may be defined as an accurate, unbiased account of significant facts of a timely happening that is of interest to the readers of the newspapers that print the account.”

“News is the first report of the significant events which have interest for the public.”

“News is an account of the current idea, event or problem that interests people.”

News is the record of the most interesting, important and accurate information obtainable about the things man thinks and says, sees, describes, plans and does.”

Former Editor-in-Chief of Indian Express Arun Shourie defines news as “When someone somewhere is trying to hide something, that is news and all other things are advertisements.” His definition is more pertaining to investigative news as he is already well-known for his investigative reporting.

According to former Editor-in-Chief of The Hindustan Times, “The standard definition that only ‘man bites dog’ is news is obsolete and inaccurate. In view of the communication gap in a democratic society that which is reported becomes news and that which is not reported remains non-news. Sensationalization, disaster, fraud and the like is news but it is not ‘sole news or the highest news.’”

Vegrhese cogently argues that reporting of more constructive developments and trends in great social, economic and political changes, technological advances, modernization processes rather than concentrating only on political news.

A well-known American Editor Stanley Walker defines news as, “News is more unpredictable than the winds. Sometimes it is the repetition of tales as old as the pyramid with new characters and again it may be almost outside the common experience.”

An eminent and legendary American Editor Joseph Pulitzer defines news as, “Original, Distinctive, Romantic, Thrilling, Unique, Curious, Quaint, Humorous, Odd and Apt-to-be-talked-about.”

Hence, it is proved that no two newspapers look at ‘news’ in an identical manner. In modern times, journalism professionals, newscasters and media personalities are most likely to define news in terms



of what people, readers, listeners, viewers—want to know ,i.e., whether it is local news, a national event or war and peace.

No news interests all. Without consciously realizing it, most people love to read only part of the newspaper they purchase. In other words, their perception and hence their reading is highly selective in nature.

1.2.3 OVERVIEW OF NEWS

News is thus something uncommon with public interest and freshness. Broadly speaking a news is something that interests, excites or concerns people. News only interests' people but at times excites and at times concerns. This is simple because it may be a mishap or an accident or a tragedy or a natural calamity. News creates good times, excellent times, great times. It may create bad times, difficult times or indifferent times.

When it comes to investigative news, it is more close to the definition given by Arun Shourie who explains news as ,” When someone somewhere is trying to hide something, that is news. All other things are advertisement.”

Editorial Study Centre (EST) of the Thompson Foundation lists 20 categories of what makes news. These are as follow:

- 1. Novelty:** Man bites a dog. Wife beats husband. Cripple scores goal. Something that could happen but had never happened before. Something which is new, innovative and unprecedented. Mini-skirts were news when they became a vogue: so did flared trousers. And in an earlier era, bikinis were hot news indeed.
- 2. Personal Impact:** What interests the average readers in his daily life. Amazon paying a bonus. Salman Khan getting married.
- 3. Local News:** A local bus accident with two dead can make more interesting news than 100 dead in a plane crash on the other side of the globe.



-
- 4. Money:** The budget (National, Regional, Local, Municipal) is news; so are taxes, fall in commodities prices, salary increments and economic crisis like growth rate at the lowest ebb of - 7.7%.
- 5. Crime:** Especially murder which has a morbid appeal. The Shushant Singh Rajput's case is of steady interest, even to those who profess that they don't read crime stories. More often than not, they do.
- 6. Sex:** Sex attracts the people. This is of perennial interest as can be gauged by the number of even the most respectable magazines that cater to this aspect of life. Also, the more sordid the sex, the greater the curiosity about it.
- 7. Conflict:** War makes a news. But peace does not make so. Conflict between man and wife resulting in divorce cases, between nations resulting in war, between man and nature resulting in the failure of one or the conquest of the other brings out reader interest. Thousands climbed Mount Everest with Tensing and Hillary. Or 40 thousand industries running peacefully in Assam despite ULFA and SULFA.
- 8. Religion:** This is another important category of news. Even an agnostic is interested in the elections of a Pope; a Cardinal found dead in Paris prostitute's apartment made news in a big way. Maharshi Mahesh Yogi, Babu Asha Ram, Rajneesh....they all make news because they appeal to our emotions.
- 9. Disaster and Tragedy:** This is yet another very important category of news. The Titanic sinks with all aboard. 2nd wave of Covid-19 frightens. More dangerous volcano erupts bringing in its wake death and destruction. "It could have happened to me", feels the reader.
- 10. Humour:** Laloo Prasad Yadav does some caricature in the Parliament to catch attention. R.K. Laxman draws a cartoon that daily draws a chuckle. Raju Shrivastav who died recently was a natural humour creator.



- 11. Human Interest:** Ordeals suffered, happiness experienced, love's labour lost, stolen money recovered. A Prime Minister's daughter is arrested for drunkenness. A wolf boy is found in the jungles of North India. Man eating glass.....snakes.....Man on moon.....Man on Mar....
- 12. The Underdog:** This is yet another important criteria for news. Charlie Chaplin's tramp in all variations in real life. The peasant who wins a case against a rapacious money-lender. Stories illustrating "Satyameva Jayate."
- 13. Mystery:** How did it happen? Where was the body ?Who discovered it ?Under what circumstances ?Suspense can keep a story running for days. Remember the Sushant Singh Rajput's murder case.
- 14. Health:** Miracle drug and medical advice columns are always popular items. Anytime there is a story of cancer cure. It invariably finds place in the news column.
- 15. Science:** Scientific discoveries and break-throughs often catch the attention of our people. Space flights have triggered the most sluggish imaginations into demanding more information. Winners of scientific discoveries make news. Nobel prize winners are always good for top billing.
- 16. Entertainment:** Entertainment, recreation and show business makes news. Who is making what film ?Why was a certain play banned ?What is Amitabh Bachchan's newest role ?What is Satyajit Ray currently busy with ?The world of entertainment always holds a fascination that is perennial as the stars and the heavens above.
- 17. Famous People:** Famous people often makes news. Whether these people are film stars, sports persons, musical prodigies or persons in high command, their working always catch the rapt attention of the readers. Famous people are often in news when there is a fall or loss or failure of their power. Jo Widen, Narendra Modi, Virat Kohli, Ravi Shankar and so on...
- 18. Weather:** Weather often attracts reader's attention. In India, there is a feeling of deep frustration if the monsoon fails or is delayed inordinately.



19. Food: Food and drink are of abiding interest to the people. Hence, food crisis is a news. So is a glut. Have the prices risen or fallen ? What about hoarding and blackmarketing ?

20. Minorities: In every part of the world we have a minority community. Its degree and intensity differs from country to country. Their treatment and problems are also of different and are of special interest to the people. Negroes in America, Dalits in India or Christians in Orissa are considered to be minorities. Hence, these minorities are often in the news.

1.3 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Note: 1) Use the space below for your answers.

2) Compare your answers with those given at the end of this lesson.

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION.

1. According to John B. Bogart,

- (a) When a man bites a dog, it is news.
- (b) When a dog bites a man, it is news.
- (c) When information comes from different directions, it is news.
- (d) None of the above.

2. News is :

- (a) What the newspaper prints and the radio broadcasts
- (b) What the newspaper wants to print but not able to print.
- (c) What the radio wants to broadcast but not able to broadcast.
- (d) None of the above.

3. The meaning of news is often described:

- (a) as the representations of the four directions—North, East, West and South.
- (b) as the representations of facts.
- (c) as the representations of information.
- (d) as the representations of tidings.

4. News may be defined as:



- (a) any accurate fact or idea that will interest a large number of editors.
- (b) any accurate fact or idea that will interest a large number of reporters.
- (c) any accurate fact or idea that will interest a large number of ministers.
- (d) any accurate fact or idea that will interest a large number of readers.

5. Full form of the organization that lists 20 categories of what makes news:

- (a) Editors' Study Centre
- (b) Editorial Study Centre
- (c) Editing Study Centre
- (d) Editorialised Study Centre

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS:

1. "When a dog bites a man, it is not a news. But whenbites a dog, it is news."
2. News is something thatexcites or concerns people.
3. A well-known American Editor Stanley Walker defines news as, "News is more unpredictable than....."
4. Hence, it is proved that no two newspapers look at 'news' in.....manner.
5. Verghese cogently argues that reporting of more constructive developments and trends in great social, economic and political changes, technological advances, modernization processes rather than concentrating only on.....

1.3 SUMMARY

In accordance with the words of George Hough of the University of Georgia, U.S.A., "News is both a product and point of view. As a product, news is gathered, processed, packaged and sold by newspapers, news services, news magazines, radio, television, cable stations and networks." George Hough again adds and remarks, "News is also whatever people think. What a reporter or an editor finds interesting or exciting or important for the people." Hence, news is something that interests, excites or concerns people. News only interests people but at times excites and at times concerns. This is simply because it may be a mishap or an accident or a tragedy or a natural calamity. News creates good times, excellent times, great times. It may create bad times, difficult times or indifferent times.



Thus, the other meaning of news may like this, “News is an account of recent event or opinion which is important or interesting or concerning.”

Importance, interest and concern are the three factors that depicts a lot of varieties and hence explain why an event is newsworthy for one newspaper or broadcasting stations and not for many other newspapers and radio or TV networks. Why the press in India publishes more about UK or US than our own villages? Why one news item becomes an international news while the other is suitable only for a local or regional newspaper?

Former Editor-in-Chief of Indian Express Arun Shourie defines news as “When someone somewhere is trying to hide something, that is news and all other things are advertisements.”

According to former Editor-in-Chief of The Hindustan Times, “The standard definition that only ‘man bites dog’ is news is obsolete and inaccurate. In view of the communication gap in a democratic society that which is reported becomes news and that which is not reported remains non-news. Sensationalization, disaster, fraud and the like is news but it is not ‘sole news or the highest news’” Verghese cogently argues that reporting of more constructive developments and trends in great social, economic and political changes, technological advances, modernization processes rather than concentrating only on political news.

A well-known American Editor Stanley Walker defines news as, “News is more unpredictable than the winds. Sometimes it is the repetition of tales as well as the pyramid with new characters and again it may be almost outside the common experience.”

An eminent and legendary American Editor Joseph Pulitzer defines news as, “Original, Distinctive, Romantic, Thrilling, Unique, Curious, Quaint, Humorous, Odd and Apt-to-be-talked-about.”

Hence, it is proved that no two newspapers look at ‘news’ in an identical manner. In modern times, journalism professionals, newscasters and media personalities are most likely to define news in terms of what people, readers, listeners, viewers—want to know ,i.e., whether it is local news, a national event or war and peace.



No news interests all. Without consciously realizing it, most people love to read only part of the newspaper they purchase. In other words, their perception and hence their reading is highly selective in nature.

1.4 KEY WORDS

Concept of News: News is an account of recent event or opinion which is important or interesting or concerning.

Meaning of News: News is “original, distinctive, Romantic, Thrilling, Unique, Curious, Quaint, Humorous, Odd and apt-to-be-talked-about.”

Definitions of News: News is something uncommon, unroutined and divergent which has public interest and which is fresh.

1.6 SELF-ASSESSMENT TEST

1. What do you mean by News? Discuss briefly five most important news definitions.
2. Discuss the concept of news with suitable examples. What do you mean by Right to Information? Do you think, it should be made a fundamental right?
3. Do you think news should be redefined in the Indian context? Explain.
4. Briefly the meaning of news.
5. What is News? Describe its important criteria.
6. Write short notes on the followings:
 - (i) *News*
 - (ii) *Concept of news*
 - (iii) *Definition of News*
 - (iv) *Poulitzer's definition of news*
 - (v) *Shouries's definition of News*
 - (vi) *Berghese's definition of news*



1.7 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION

1. When a man bites a dog, it is news.
 - (a) What the newspaper prints and the radio broadcasts
 - (a) as the representations of the four directions—North, East, West and South.
 - (d) any accurate fact or idea that will interest a large number of readers.
 - (b) Editorial Study Centre

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS

1. A man
2. Interests
3. The winds
4. An identical
5. Political news

1.8 REFERENCES/SUGGESTED READINGS

1. Kamath,M.V. (1990) - "Professional Journalism" published by Vikas Publishing House Private Limited, New Delhi.
2. Shrivastav, K.M(1999)-"News Reporting and Editing" published by Sterling Publishing Private Limited, New Delhi.
3. Stovall,James Glen(2006)-"Writing for the Mass Media"6th edition,published by Pearson Education Inc. and Dorling Kindersley Publishing Inc.
4. Tewari,Arjun(1994)—“Jansanchar aur Hindi Patrakarita” published by Jaibharti Prakashan,Allahabad.
5. "Media Problems and Prospects (1983)" published by National Media Centre.
6. Rayudu, C.S. (1993) - "Media and Communication Management" published by Himalaya Published House, New Delhi.
7. COMMUNICATOR (VOL. XXXXI, NO. 28, APRIL - JUNE 1996) published by the Indian Institute of Mass Communication, New Delhi.



(Related and Suggested Websites retrieved on 23 September,2022).

1. <https://www.europacorp.com/assets/uploads/news9.pdf>
2. <https://www.google.com/search?q=what+is+news&rlz>.
3. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Concept+of+news&rlz>.
4. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Definitions+of+news&rlz>.



SUBJECT: REPORTING	
COURSE CODE: MSM-523 A	AUTHOR: DR MANOJ DAYAL
LESSON NO.: 2	
CONCEPT, MEANING & DEFINITIONS OF NEWS: AN OVERVIEW	

STRUCTURE

- 2.0 Objectives
- 2.1 Introduction
- 2.2 Sources of News
 - 2.2.1 Sources of News for Audience
 - 2.2.2 Sources of News for Desk
 - 2.2.3 Sources of News for Reporters/Correspondents
 - 2.2.3.1 Conventional Sources of News
 - 2.2.3.2 Non-conventional Sources of News
 - 2.2.3.3 Unexpected Sources of News
- 2.3 Check Your Progress
- 2.4 Summary
- 2.5 Keywords
- 2.6 Self-Assessment Test
- 2.7 Answers to Check Your Progress
- 2.8 References/Suggested Reading

2.0 LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Understand the sources of news.
- Explain the sources of news for the audience.
- Throw light on sources of news for the desk.
- Describe the sources of news for the reportorial staff.
- Understand the conventional sources of news.



- Discuss the non-conventional sources of news.
- Describe the unexpected sources of news.

2.1 INTRODUCTION

News is as important and indispensable as oxygen in our life. We cannot survive without news. However critical we may be for the media, but we are perturbed and stressed when newspapers are not available over our morning cup of tea. We as readers, listeners, viewers and users get news from different sources like newspapers, radio, television, internet, etc.

Similarly, all these media organizations which have two primary sources of news as they are called "News Gatherers". These news gatherers are desk staff and field persons. The desk staffs are broadly called sub editors and the field persons are prominently called reporters. Other than that, the audience have their own sources of news which are crystal clear.

2.2 SOURCES OF NEWS

The desk staff are generally called Sub Editors. But they are specifically called Sub Editors, Senior Sub Editors, Chief Sub Editors, Deputy News Editors and News Editors. News editors are also called News Managers, News Coordinators or Content Managers and so on and so forth.

These people are the real "dark horse" of the media and are often called the "Hero behind the scene". When the field people like reporters or correspondents fail to provide news on some crucial occasions, the desk people arrange news on the basis of their own capacity, capability and personality. More often than not, the field people fail to provide news from some other invisible or exclusive angles, and then the desk people arrange it on their own telephone contacts, internet sites, and other media including news agencies. In emergency situation, the News Editor or even Editor arranges and interview of some personality either offline or online.

As far as field person like reporters/respondents are concerned, they get a variety of news from conventional sources, non-conventional sources, and unexpected sources of news. Both sub editors and reporters are described as the news hunters for a media organization. But in real sense of



journalism, field persons like reporters and correspondents are real news gatherers. They are both responsible for overall effective news arrangements and presentation in the media system. Reporters are described as the eyes and ears of a media organization whereas sub editors are described as the central nervous system.

2.2.1 SOURCES OF NEWS FOR AUDIENCE

Audiences are of various types like readers, listeners, viewers, users, etc. Readers are the main audience as far as newspapers or news magazines is concerned. They get a variety of news from mechanical news to creative news, from investigative news to interpretative news and from news analysis to backgrounder. Readers get even developmental stories and the variety of other types of news like sports news, campus news, cultural news, political news, parliamentary news, crime news, etc. From newspapers of various natures like small newspapers, medium newspapers, large newspapers, evening newspapers, weekly newspapers and so on and so forth.

Similarly, listeners get a variety of news of social, economic, political, educational, cultural, religious, spiritual from community radio, AM radio, FM radio, local radio, regional radio, national radio, international radio, internet radio, etc. In the same line, viewers get a lot of news of different varieties from local channels, city channels, regional channels, national channels, government channels and private channels.

2.2.2 SOURCES OF NEWS FOR DESK

Desk is a place where news gets its final treatment. Hence, it is often said, "Reporters are the first gate-keepers of a news whereas sub-editors are the final gate-keepers". Desk mostly gets the news from their own correspondents/reporters like correspondent, senior correspondent, special correspondent, chief of the bureau, foreign correspondent, reporters, senior reporters, chief reporters, etc. Other than that desk gets news from various International and national agencies like AP, AFP, TASS, Reuters, UNI, PTI, Bhasa, Univarta, and ANI etc.

In addition, desk receives a lot of news items directly from their contractual stringers. Desk also receives a large numbers of press releases, press notes, press briefings, etc. from different government



departments, private organizations, semi-government agencies, and so on and so forth. There are a complete set of public relations system in the both central government as well as state governments. As far as, the central government is concerned, they have a Press Information Bureau in the capital city, i.e, New Delhi. Other than that, the PIBs are also there in the state capitals, metro cities, megacities etc. Similarly there are Public Relations Officers or Information Officers in different governmental departments. On the same line in state governments, they have Director, Public relations, Joint Director, Deputy Director at state level, District Public Relations, Assistant Public Relations, etc. at district level to provide Press Releases, etc to the desk of newspapers, magazines, radio, television, online media and so on.

Other than that, the desk people arrange their own exclusive interviews with dignitaries and celebrities, time and again as per their requirements in which sometimes even Chief Editor is directly involved. Chief editors like Arun Shourie, H.K. Dua, B.G. Verghese, Dilip Padgaonkar. etc. used to fix up appointments for interviews with top personalities like Prime Minister, President, opposition chief like Lok Nayak Jai Prakash Narain, etc. for their news organizations.

2.2.3 SOURCES OF NEWS FOR REPORTER/CORRESPONDENT

A reporter or correspondent gets news from various sources like press releases, press notes, press briefings, press conferences, interviews, international news agencies like Reuters, AP, AFP, TASS etc. A reporter also gets a lot of news from the Indian news agencies like PTI, UNI, Bhasha, Univarta, ANI, etc. Agency copies can be directly treated by the desk also. But it is often taken by the concerned reporter/correspondent who is also covering that beat. Then the reporter/correspondent also adds a lot of facts which were not covered by the news agencies. The other copies may be directly taken care by the desk. Hence, it becomes either an agency copy or a joint copy. Thus, we can explain the various sources of news for a reporter/correspondent like:

- (1) Conventional sources of news
- (2) Non-conventional sources of news
- (3) Unexpected sources of news

2.2.3.1 CONVENTIONAL SOURCES OF NEWS



As discussed earlier, that press releases, press notes, press briefings, press conferences, interviews are important sources of news. Yes, if these press releases, press notes, press briefings are coming from registered bodies or government departments of centre or state or district, then it will be described as an important conventional source of news. If these press releases, press notes, press briefings are from unregistered private agencies, and non-governmental organization, then these copies will not be treated as conventional sources.

We are already aware that there is a well-known bureau of Government of India called Press Information Bureau abbreviated as PIB. Press Information Bureau (PIB) is a nodal governmental agency which sends press releases of the important national policies, plans schemes of the Government of India. PIB is also there in the capital cities and megacities which not only sends Central Government news to the press and media, but it also gives feedback to the Government of India about public feelings. Then we have Public relations department of State Government and district government holding different posts like Director Public Relations (DPR), Joint Director Public Relations (JDPR), Deputy Director Public Relations (DDPR), District Public Relations Officer (DPRO), Assistant Public Relations Officer (APRO), etc. Other than that there are Public Relation Officers or Information Officers of universities, colleges and other institutions which may send press releases, press notes, press briefings etc. Even there are separate PROs or IOs of different departments of Central Government and state governments which may send specific press releases, press notes and press briefings.

Then all the international news agencies like AP, AFP, TASS, Reuters, etc. are conventional sources of news. Such copies may come directly to the desk or may be taken by the reporter/correspondent of the concerned beat. The reporter/correspondent may add his or her own coverage of that event and also may create a joint story of agency and reporter.

Similarly, all the Indian news agencies like PTI, UNI, Bhasha, Univarta, ANI etc. are important sources of both desk as well as field reporter/correspondent assigned to that concerned beat.

2.2.3.2 NON-CONVENTIONAL SOURCES OF NEWS



Unregistered, unrecognized, unorganized and unknown organizations or individuals are treated as non-conventional sources of news. Betel sellers, dhaba, taxi drivers, rickshaw pullers, security persons, bus drivers, auto drivers, drivers of VVIP's, peons sweepers, gardeners, students, parents, etc. are generally treated as non-conventional sources of news. Such sources may provide news to the reporters/ correspondents of the concerned beat or may, provide news directly to the desk. Unconventional sources are not treated as reliable sources unlike conventional sources of news. Hence, news collected through unconventional sources must be checked, multi-checked and cross-check.

Thus, common persons like sweepers, peons, betel sellers, taxi drivers, disgruntled persons of any organization are treated as non-conventional sources of news. Sometimes such sources give very important clues which have led to even the highest level of investigative journalism or scandals. But news coming from non-conventional sources must be checked, cross-checked and multi-checked.

2.2.3.3 UNEXPECTED SOURCES OF NEWS

Such sources are not planned sources. The reporter or the correspondent goes on his or her beat with a planning. But suddenly he or she observes something unique and exceptional. Then that reporter or correspondent follows that situation frequently and continuously. And in this process, whatever sources come in between are generally described as unexpected sources of news. For example, suppose a reporter of political beat during his or her visit to the office of Chief Minister finds that the MLA of opposition party is also sitting there. The reporter immediately becomes sceptic and raises his eyes brows with a lot of doubt as to why the MLA of opposition party is there in the office of the ruling party. Then the reporter in suspect tries to check it with the Personal Assistant of CM. But he doesn't get a clear-cut answer. But his doubt continues. Then he tries to check the fact with the Principal Secretary. Again he meets the Political Secretary of the Chief Minister. In this process, the reporter gets a little clue. He then meets that MLA who confirms that he is about to join the ruling party. And finally, the reporter meets the Chief Minister and gets the news reconfirmed. This is all unexpected sources, covering unexpected events all of a sudden.

Thus, when the reportorial staff has gone to cover something and suddenly gets something new or different from some individuals, then it is called unexpected sources of news.



2. 3 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Note: 1) Use the space below for your answers.

2) Compare your answers with those given at the end of this lesson.

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION.

1. Who are described as central nervous system of a news organization?

- (a) Reporters
- (b) Correspondents
- (c) Sub editors
- (d) None of the above.

2. Where does the news get its final treatment?

- (a) Field
- (b) Desk
- (c) Reporters' room
- (d) None of the above.

3. Who are described as first gate keeper of a news?

- (a) Sub editors
- (b) Reporters
- (c) Chief sub editors
- (d) None of the above.

4. Which news sources are described as conventional sources?

- (a) Stringers
- (b) News agencies
- (c) Betal sellers
- (d) Taxi drivers

5. For whom is an interview treated as news gathering technique?



- (a) Sub editors
- (b) Chief sub editors
- (c) Reporters
- (d) None of the above.

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS:

1. News is as important as.....in our life.
2. Sub editors are called the.....
3. Both sub editors and reporters are described as of news for a media organization.
4. Reporters are described as..... of the media organization.
5. Sub editors are described as.....gate keepers of a news.

2.4 SUMMARY

News Sources is place or centre or person wherefrom the news is received or collected. News sources for the audience is media, while for the desk it is primarily the reportorial staff. And for the reportorial staff, it is beat, spot, press release, press conference, interview, etc. News Sources for Audience are newspapers, magazines, radio bulletins, television channels, films, cinemas, movies, internet sites, mobile apps, etc., which are considered to be the news sources for the audience. News Sources for Desk are Reportorial staff consisting of reporters, correspondents, news agencies, and sometimes even other media are considered to be the news sources for the desk. When we talk of reportorial staff, it includes senior reporters, chief reporters, correspondents, senior correspondents, special correspondents, foreign correspondents, chief of the bureau, stringers, etc. News Sources for Reportorial Staffs are Beats, spots, press releases, press conferences, interviews, symposiums, stringers, agency staff, own colleagues, friends, neighbors, etc. are considered to be the sources of news for the reportorial staff. Sometimes even competing newspapers or other media organizations also turn out to be the sources for them to some extent due to personal friendliness. Conventional News Sources are Reportorial staffs consisting of reporters, correspondents, news agencies are treated as conventional sources of news. Other than those press releases from government or other registered bodies. Similarly press conferences of government or registered bodies or famous personalities are also considered to be the conventional



sources of news. Direct interviews of government officials or famous personalities from film, politics, sports, etc. are also treated as conventional sources. Non-conventional News Sources are Common persons like sweepers, peons, betel sellers, taxi drivers, disgruntled persons of any organization are treated as non-conventional sources of news. Sometimes such sources give very important clues which have led to even the highest level of investigative journalism or scandals. But news coming from non-conventional sources must be checked, cross-checked and multi-checked. Unexpected News Sources emerge in such situation When the reportorial staff has gone to cover something and suddenly gets something new or different from some individuals, then it is called unexpected sources of news.

2.5 KEY WORDS

News Sources: It is place or centre or person wherefrom the news is received or collected. News sources for the audience is media, while for the desk it is primarily the reportorial staff. And for the reportorial staff, it is beat, spot, press release, press conference, interview, etc.

News Sources for Audience: It is newspapers, magazines, radio bulletins, television channels, films, cinemas, movies, internet sites, mobile apps, etc., which are considered to be the news sources for the audience.

News Sources for Desk: Reportorial staff consisting of reporters, correspondents, news agencies, and sometimes even other media are considered to be the news sources for the desk. When we talk of reportorial staff, it includes senior reporters, chief reporters, correspondents, senior correspondents, special correspondents, foreign correspondents, chief of the bureau, stringers, etc.

News Sources for Reportorial Staff: Beats, spots, press releases, press conferences, interviews, symposiums, stringers, agency staff, own colleagues, friends, neighbors, etc. are considered to be the sources of news for the reportorial staff. Sometimes even competing newspapers or other media organizations also turn out to be the sources for them to some extent due to personal friendliness.

Conventional News Sources: Reportorial staff consisting of reporters, correspondents, news agencies are treated as conventional sources of news. Other than those press releases from government or other registered bodies. Similarly press conferences of government or registered bodies or famous



personalities are also considered to be the conventional sources of news. Direct interviews of government officials or famous personalities from film, politics, sports, etc. are also treated as conventional sources.

Non-conventional News Sources: Common persons like sweepers, peons, betel sellers, taxi drivers, disgruntled persons of any organization are treated as non-conventional sources of news. Sometimes such sources give very important clues which have led to even the highest level of investigative journalism or scandals. But news coming from non-conventional sources must be checked, cross-checked and multi-checked.

Unexpected News Sources: When the reportorial staff has gone to cover something and suddenly gets something new or different from some individuals, then it is called unexpected sources of news.

2.6 SELF-ASSESSMENT TEST

1. What do you mean by News Sources? Discuss briefly about news sources.
2. What do you mean by sources of news for the audience? Explain with suitable examples.
3. What are the news sources for the desk? Discuss its importance.
4. Describe the various sources of news for the reportorial staff.
5. Throw light on conventional sources of news.
6. Explain the non-conventional sources of news with suitable examples.
7. What do you mean by unexpected sources of news. Elaborate.
8. Write short notes on the followings:
 - (i) News sources
 - (ii) News sources for audience,
 - (iii) News sources for desk
 - (iv) News sources for reportorial staff
 - (v) Conventional news sources
 - (vi) Non-conventional news sources
 - (vii) Unexpected news sources

2.7 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

**A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION**

1. (c) Sub editors
2. (b) Desk
3. (b) Reporters
4. (b) News agencies
5. (c) Reporter

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS

1. Oxygen
2. Hero behind the screen
3. Haunters
4. Eyes and ears
5. Final

2.8 REFERENCES/SUGGESTED READINGS

1. Kamath,M.V. (1990) - "Professional Journalism" published by Vikas Publishing House Private Limited, New Delhi.
2. Shrivastav, K.M(1999)-"News Reporting and Editing" published by Sterling Publishing Private Limited, New Delhi.
3. Stovall,James Glen(2006)-"Writing for the Mass Media"6th edition,published by Pearson Education Inc. and Dorling Kindersley Publishing Inc.
4. Tewari,Arjun(1994)—"Jansanchar aur Hindi Patrakarita" published by Jaibharti Prakashan,Allahabad.
5. "Media Problems and Prospects (1983)" published by National Media Centre.
6. Rayudu, C.S. (1993) - "Media and Communication Management" published by Himalaya Published House, New Delhi.
7. COMMUNICATOR (VOL. XXXXI, NO. 28, APRIL - JUNE 1996) published by the Indian Institute of Mass Communication, New Delhi.



(Related and Suggested Websites retrieved on 25th September, 2022).

1. <http://studylecturenotes.com/source-of-news-in-journalism-radio-tv-newspapers-magazines/>
2. <https://www.google.com/search?q=what+is+news&rlz>.
3. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Concept+of+news&rlz>.
4. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Definitions+of+news&rlz>.



SUBJECT: REPORTING	
COURSE CODE: MSM-523 A	AUTHOR: DR MANOJ DAYAL
LESSON NO.: 3	
TYPES OF NEWS	

STRUCTURE

The lesson structure shall be as follows:

- 3.0 Learning Objectives
- 3.1 Introduction
- 3.2 Types of News
 - 3.2.1 Thematic Types of News
 - 3.2.2 Functional Types of News
 - 3.2.3 Directional Types of News
 - 3.2.4 Structural Types of News
 - 3.2.5 Level-Wise Types of News
 - 3.2.6 Media-Wise Types of News
- 3.3 Check Your Progress
- 3.4 Summary
- 3.5 Keywords
- 3.6 Self-Assessment Test
- 3.7 Answers to Check Your Progress
- 3.8 References/Suggested Readings

3.0 LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Understand the types of news.
- Explain thematical types of news.
- Throw light on functional types of news



- Describe structural types of news.
- Discuss level-wise types of news.
- Understand media-wise types of news.

3.1 INTRODUCTION

As we all know that news is something new with public interest and freshness. Broadly speaking, news is anything that report of an event that has just taken place. News is details of information, description, depiction, delineation, narration statement and occurrence which is recent, new fresh or unknown

3.2 TYPES OF NEWS

Newspaper is an industry and news is its product. News is a commodity. News is both a social commodity and a saleable commodity. As George Hough of the University of Georgia, U.S.A. rightly says , “News is both a product and point of view. As a product, news is gathered, processed, packaged and sold by newspapers, news services, news magazines, radio, television, cable stations and networks.” George Hough again adds and remarks, “News is also whatever people think. What a reporter or an editor finds interesting or exciting or important for the people.” Hence, news is something that interests, excites or concerns people. News only interests people but at times excites and at times concerns. This is simple because it may be a mishap or an accident or a tragedy or a natural calamity. News creates good times, excellent times, great times. It may create bad times, difficult times or indifferent times.

Hence, it can be categorized into as many types as the prevailing issues are. However, there are some prominent types of news which are frequently used, often operated and regularly pronounced.

The types of news may be further divided into a variety like:

- (i) Thematic Types
- (ii) Functional Types
- (iii) Structural Types

3.2.1 THEMATIC TYPES OF NEWS



This type of news is the largest and the widest. That is to say this type includes as many types as there are subjects, themes and issues. However, there are some most popular such types which are as follows:

- a) Political News
 - b) Parliamentary News
 - c) Economic News
 - d) Business News
 - e) Financial News
 - f) Social News
 - g) Crime News
 - h) Women News
 - i) Youth Affairs News
 - j) Children News
 - k) Health News
 - l) Environmental News
 - m) Sports News
 - n) Educational News
 - o) Campus News
 - p) Science News
 - q) Information Technology News
 - r) Cultural News
 - s) Religious News
 - t) Spiritual News
- a) **POLITICAL NEWS:** Political news is perhaps the most prominent type of news as it gets maximum coverage in almost all the media whether it is newspaper, magazine, radio, TV, film, internet or anything else.

Political news relates to the events of the ruling party, opposition parties, Lok Sabha, Rajya Sabha, Vidhan Sabha, Vidhan Parishad, election, etc.



Political news is concerned to the changes in the ruling party, its ministries, its leaders like president, vice presidents, general secretaries, joint secretaries, treasures, etc. It relates to a variety of meetings and get togethers in the office of the ruling party whether it is of national level or zonal level, regional level or district level or university/college level or municipal level. It includes the election of even international level including the elections of US, UK, Japan or all developed countries. The US President election is a much –debated topic in India. It relates to the elections of developing countries also specially neighbouring countries like Nepal, Bhutan, Varma, Pakistan, Bangladesh, Fiji, etc. When we talk of elections under this types, as it is rightly indicated earlier that it includes elections of all varieties and at all level. Even if it is a by-election, it is a hot political news. Even if it is an election of students' union at the university/college level it becomes a vital news as it is sometimes treated as a sampling election of Lok Sabha and Vidhan Sabha. If there is an election in some other states, still it is nerve tingling news in the own state. Similarly sometimes even municipal elections are treated as vital events as these elections too are often treated as sampling elections for the Lok Sabha and the Vidhan Sabha. On the same lines the events in the office of opposition parties are none-the-less significant. The actions, reactions, comments and agitations promoted or promulgated by oppositions are equally vital political concerns in our nation. For example, the present agitation of Agni Veer followed by mass train and bus burning and public damages in Bihar are always described as politically motivated issues.

- b) **PARLIAMENTARY NEWS:** It is a type within the type of political news. But since it covers a vast range of political events, issues, discussions, debates, deliberations, bills, etc., hence parliamentary news gets a separate entity and identity as a type of reporting.

Parliamentary news includes the news of the Lok Sabha, the Rajya Sabha and various parliamentary debates on national issues. It includes pre-budget, pre-monsoon and all nationally related and relevant political issues, debates, bills, etc.

Since the Parliament is the soul foundation of our law-making and review of law implementation, hence this type of news needs a separate study, discussion, identity and entity.



The debates, discussions and deliberations of the Parliament become a major centre of attraction as it is the beats, hearts and souls of our Indian democracy. Even non-residents Indians enjoy such parliamentary deliberations on television and online media. Thus, parliamentary news is very relevant, useful, important and interesting in the larger public interest.

(c) ECONOMIC NEWS: Economic news relates to bread and butter. This is very important, relevant and useful type of news as it pertains to primary sector of our economy, i.e., agriculture and forestry. Then it is directly related to the secondary sector of our economy ,i.e., industry and manufacturing sector. And it predominantly relates to tertiary sector of our economy ,i.e., electricity, water, transport, road, air, information technology, services, etc. That means tertiary sector of our economy is a bridge between primary sector and secondary sector of our economy. Truly speaking, neither agriculture nor industry can run without electricity, water, air, information technology, services, etc.

Broadly speaking economic news includes agriculture, forestry, industry, poverty, unemployment, economic inequality, regional disparity, soaring prices, export, import, debt trap, debt crisis, foreign exchange, shares, debentures, annual plans, five-year plans, market, stock market, tax, budget, fiscal policy, etc. Hence, economic news is taken in broader perspective and wider spectrum. It is a macro-term.

(D) BUSINESS NEWS: It is an integral part of economic news. But unlike economic news, it is a micro-term. It relates to trade, efforts and activities undertaken by individuals to produce and sell goods and services for profit. As we know that the term business refers to an organization or enterprising entity actively engaged in commercial, industrial or professional activities. Business types range from limited liability companies to sole proprietorships, corporations and partnerships. Some of the business activities run as small operations in a single industry while others are large operations that spread across so many industries around the world. Thus, business news being a part of economic news has its own separate identity and entity and it gets a respectable coverage not only in economic, financial or business newspapers or magazines, but even in general newspapers or magazines.



(E) FINANCIAL NEWS: Again it is a part and parcel of economic news having an independent entity and identity. It pertains to monetary receipts and expenditures, referring to credit, debit, interest, loans, investments, savings, money matters or monetary institutions like banking, insurance companies, mutual funds, shares, debentures, etc. Economic news studies local or global markets, human behavior, goods or services. On the other hand, financial news focuses on the financial system and things related to credit, debit, loans, interest, premium, savings, investments, etc.

3.2.2 FUNCTIONAL TYPES OF NEWS

This relates to overall national and international development, interpretative issues, investigative matters, sensational facts, news analysis and backgrounders. Hence, development news, interpretative news, investigative news, sensational news, news analysis and backgrounders broadly relates to functional types of news.

Development news is that which not only highlights as to how much development has taken place, but also persuades and motivates the people and the Government to participate in developmental activities. Then comes interpretative news under this category which analyses the news such that its factuality, accuracy, balance, objectivity and fairness are not lost.

Thereafter, sensational news relates to covering sensational issues. Sensational news may not be always yellow journalism. This is because sensational news may be sensational in its natural process. When the news is exaggerated or understated to make it sensational, then it is dangerous and such news is called yellow journalism.

Further, investigative news is news behind the news. Here, one source leads to another source. Thus, there is a chain of sources. That is why investigative news is also called news of the news or news behind the news. And it is also called 'Grand News' occasionally.

Backgrounders are yet another functional type of news, which basically presents the news in its chronological order.



On the other hand, news analysis is a glorified form of a backgrounder which is not chronological, but sequential with news value and importance of facts. Here again, the facts are presented in a news form such that it becomes self-analysed maintaining the factuality, accuracy, balance, objectivity and fairness.

3.2.3 DIRECTIONAL TYPE OF NEWS

This type of news is further categorized as mechanical news and creative news. “Six die and four injured in a road accident’ is a mechanical news comes under directional type of news, whereas “Horror of Poverty keeps her haunting “is a creative news. Or “Congress leadership is on the horns of a dilemma.”

3.2.4 STRUCTURAL TYPES OF NEWS

This type of news may be categorized as “Hard News” and “Soft News”. One school of thought describes Hard News as news containing bare facts like “Two dies and five injured.” On the other hand, the soft news is not merely an amalgamation of bare facts, but it is a mixture of news and views. Other school of thought describes that Hard News are on serious issues like politics, economics, constitution, foreign policy, etc. On the other hand, ‘Soft News’ relates to entertainment, art, culture, literature, film, television and television programmes.

3.2.5 LEVEL –WISE TYPE OF NEWS

This is generally categorized as:

- (a) Local News
 - (b) Regional News
 - (c) National News
 - (d) International News
- (a) **Local News:** This relates to local issues, events, happenings, concerns, etc. For example, the news items published in the city edition or city pull outs of a newspaper or city bulletin of a radio or city channel of a television. The importance of local news has gone up tremendously



specially after demassification. The emergence of demassification has separated the main edition of a newspaper and city edition. So is the case with Radio and Television. In this era of information technology, the extreme form of demassification has emerged which has taken the audience to the mobile level. We may call it micro-demassification also where four persons are using four different mobiles even if the television is operationally on or newspapers are lying on the table in front.

This mobile journalism popularly called “MOJO” has also started presenting the news of local area to the people residing in that area or registered location of that mobile even if you are out of state or out of country. Hence, local news is area restricted maximum up to your district. It includes all varieties of local news of politics, society, economics, business, education, sports, science, culture, art, literature, religion, spiritualism, tourism, health, environment, climate, etc.

- (b) **Regional News:** This is also called provincial news or state-level news. It is crystal clear with the name itself that this type of news relates to the regional-level events whether it relates to politics, assembly, society, children, youth, women, economics, commerce, business, education, sports, art, culture, literature, science, health, environment, climate, tourism, etc. And such news items are published on regional page or regional bulletin or regional channel having regional audience.
- (c) **National News:** This type of news relates to the issues, events, incidents, happenings and concerns of national level. Moreover, this type of news items are published on the national page or front page or prominent pages of a newspaper or national bulletin or telecast of a radio or national channel of a television. Such news items have national audience or its audience should be at least a representative of the national audience. For example, Punjab Kesari and Rajasthan Patrika are regional newspapers despite much more circulation than Jansatta (Hindi newspaper). This is because Punjab Kesari is confined to Punjab, Haryana, Himachal and Delhi as far as its audiences are concerned. But Jansatta, on the other hand, is available in South, North East and every state and its prominent libraries. And its audience is at least a representative sample of the national audience despite less circulation than Punjab Kesari, Rajasthan Patrika, Dainik Bhaskar, Dainik Jagaran, Rastriy Sahara. So is the case in all other media.



- (d) **International News:** This is also called World News, Global News, or News-Across-the-Country. This news is of international relevance and importance touching the nerves of the global audience. It has a global news value and its audience is at least a representative sample of international audience representing all the continents, countries, zones, states, etc. Again, such news may be related to policies, law, UNO, UNESCO, guidelines, activities, economy, business, society, women, labour, children, youth, education, culture, art, literature, religion, spiritualism, health, science, space, environment, tourism, etc. The usefulness and significance of international news have gone up tremendously, especially after liberalization, globalization, privatization and marketisation. More so, after neo-liberalization. The technological advancement leads to global village concept and the world is now treated as very small. People are fast migrating from one country to another and may settle on the moon after 2040 as estimated by the scientists.

3.2.6 MEDIA-WISE NEWS

It can be categorized as follows :

- (a) Radio news
 - (b) Television News
 - (c) Newspaper News
 - (d) Magazine News
 - (e) News Agency News
 - (f) Internet News
 - (g) Mobile News
- (a) **Radio News:** This type of news is telecast on radio in the form of local news by FM radio, low-ranged private radio, community radio. Radio news gives equal weightage to Pradeshik Samachar (Regional News) with the help of AM radio. It also gives national news with the help of high-ranged AM radio. The international news items are telecast by super high range radio like BBC, Voice of America and so on.
- (b) **Television News:** This type of news is broadcast on television locally, regionally, nationally and internationally. The city channel and community television broadcast local-level news. The state-



level regional television centres broadcast the news of the whole province. Television's national channel like DD, DD1, DD2 (Govt. channels) and private channels (Like ABP News, Zee News, Aaj Tak, NDTV, etc.) provide news of national importance called national news. Then the international channels of television like CNN, HBO, etc. broadcast news of international importance, relevance, usefulness and worthiness.

- (c) **Newspaper News:** This provides all varieties of news in English, Hindi and several other vernacular languages. Though this range of linguistic diversity is available in all types of media, yet the news appearing in the newspapers are treated as the most 'stable' and 'static' in nature. 'Stable' and 'static' in the sense that the readers can read these news so many times till they actually understand and retain the news. Hence, Newspaper news has its own importance over a morning cup of tea.
- (d) **Magazine News:** We have some news magazines like India Today, Outlook, Economists, etc. which provide news in much different format than that of a newspaper. The magazine news items are generally in the form of News Analysis, Soft News, Backgrounder, Interpretative News, Investigative News, and Development News and so on.
- (e) **News Agency News:** News agencies are described as whole sellers of news. They provide news to various newspapers, magazines, radios, televisions, internets and so on. News produced by news agencies are professionally written by experts so that the various media organizations may provide news to their readers with high degree of authenticity, reliability, factuality, balance, accuracy and objectivity. News agencies whether national like UNI, PTI, Bhasha, UNIVARTA, ANI, etc. or international like AP, AFP, Reuter, TASS, etc. provided news to their retailing subscribers with high level of responsibility and these are well-filtered. News Agencies News do not need to be checked, cross-checked and multi-checked as news agencies are treated as reliable and conventional sources of news.
- (f) **Internet News:** Such news items are available online through internet on PC, Laptop, Tab or even mobile. Internet news is transferred from one part of the world to the other in a fraction of seconds. Such news also covers a variety of range from politics, parliament, economy, business, commerce, education, science, space, health, environment, culture, art, literature, sports, tourism, religion, spiritualism, etc.



(g) **Mobile News:** This type of news comes through internet as mentioned above. But there are so many mobile apps also like Inshort, etc. which provides news in just 150 words.

Similarly, there are a wide variety of apps which provide news of politics, parliament, economy, business, commerce, education, science, space, health, environment, culture, art, literature, sports, tourism, religion, spiritualism, etc.

3.3 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Note: 1) Use the space below for your answers.

2) Compare your answers with those given at the end of this lesson.

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION.

1. Backgrounders present news:

- (a) In a systematic order
- (b) In a chronological order
- (c) In an arranged order
- (d) In a scientific order

2. Political news relates to:

- (e) Infrastructure
- (f) Primary sector
- (g) Political parties
- (h) Secondary sector

3. Economic news deals with:

- (a) Ruling party
- (b) Primary sector
- (c) Parliamentary affairs
- (d) Lok Sabha.

**4. Parliamentary news is an integral part of :**

- (a) Economic news.
- (b) Political news.
- (c) Infrastructure.
- (d) Secondary sector.

5. Sports news deals with :

- .(a) Human resources
- (b) Government
- (c) Indoor & Outdoor games
- (d) Social activities

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS:

1. News agencies are described as..... of news
2. Environment news relates to and natural activities.
3. Campus news relates to
4. Local news pertains to local.....
5. Punjab Kesari despite a very large circulation is a..... daily.

3.4 SUMMARY

Thematic types of news is the largest and the widest. That is to say this type includes as many types as there are subjects, themes and issues. However, there are some most popular such types which are as follows : Political News, Parliamentary News, Economic News, Business News, Financial News, Social News, Crime News, Women News, Youth Affairs News, Children News, Health News, Environmental News, Sports News, Educational News, Campus News, Science News, Information Technology News, Cultural News, Religious News, Spiritual News. Moreover, there are Directional Type of News which is further categorized as mechanical news and creative news. "Six die and four injured in a road accident" is a mechanical news comes under directional type of news, whereas "Horror of Poverty keeps her haunting " is a creative news. Or "Congress leadership is on the horns of a dilemma. "Futher, there are Structural Types of News This type of news may be categorized as "Hard News" and "Soft News".



One school of thought describes Hard News as news containing bare facts like “Two dies and 5 injured.” On the other hand, the soft news is not merely an amalgamation of bare facts, but it is a mixture of news and views. Other school of thought describes that Hard News are on serious issues like politics, economics, constitution, foreign policy, etc. On the other hand, ‘Soft News’ relates to entertainment, art, culture, literature, film, television programmes. Moreover, there are Level –Wise Type of News which is generally categorized as Local News, Regional News, National News, International News. Again there are Media-Wise News which can be categorized as follows :

Radio news, Television News, Newspaper News, Magazine News, News Agency, News Internet News, Mobile News.

3.5 KEY WORDS

THEMATIC TYPES OF NEWS: This type of news is the largest and the widest. That is to say this type includes as many types as there are subjects, themes and issues. However, there are some most popular such types which are as follows: Political news, parliamentary news, economic news, business news, financial news, social news, crime news, women news, youth affairs news, children news, health news, environmental news, sports news, educational news, campus news, science news, information technology news, cultural news, religious news, spiritual news.

DIRECTIONAL TYPE OF NEWS: This type of news is further categorized as mechanical news and creative news.” Six die and four injured in a road accident’ is a mechanical news comes under directional type of news, whereas ‘Horror of Poverty keeps her haunting “ is a creative news. Or “Congress leadership is on the horns of a dilemma.”

STRUCTURAL TYPES OF NEWS: This type of news may be categorized as “Hard News” and “Soft News”. One school of thought describes Hard News as news containing bare facts like “Two dies and 5 injured.” On the other hand, the soft news is not merely an amalgamation of bare facts, but it is a mixture of news and views. Other school of thought describes that hard news are on serious issues like politics, economics, constitution, foreign policy, etc. On the other hand, ‘Soft News’ relates to entertainment, art, culture, literature, film, television programmes.



LEVEL -WISE TYPE OF NEWS: This is generally categorized as: Local news, regional news, national news, international news.

MEDIA-WISE NEWS: It can be categorized as follows: Radio news, television news, newspaper news, magazine news, news agency news, internet news, mobile news.

3.6 SELF-ASSESSMENT TEST

1. What do you mean by News? Discuss the various types of news.
2. Describe thematic types of news with examples.
3. Discuss structural types of news comprehensively.
4. Explain functional types of news with suitable examples.
5. Throw light on the level-wise types of news with examples.
6. Describe the media-wise types of news in details?

3.6 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION

1. (b) In a chronological order
2. (c) Political parties
3. (b) Primary sector
4. (b) Political
5. (c) Indoor & Outdoor activities

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS

- 1.

3.8. REFERENCES/SUGGESTED READINGS

1. Kamath,M.V. (1990) - "Professional Journalism" published by Vikas Publishing House Private Limited, New Delhi.
2. Shrivastav, K.M(1999)-"News Reporting and Editing" published by Sterling Publishing Private Limited, New Delhi.



3. Stovall, James Glen (2006) - "Writing for the Mass Media" 6th edition, published by Pearson Education Inc. and Dorling Kindersley Publishing Inc.
4. Tewari, Arjun (1994) — "Jansanchar aur Hindi Patrakarita" published by Jaibharti Prakashan, Allahabad.
5. "Media Problems and Prospects (1983)" published by National Media Centre.
6. Rayudu, C.S. (1993) - "Media and Communication Management" published by Himalaya Published House, New Delhi.
7. COMMUNICATOR (VOL. XXXXI, NO. 28, APRIL - JUNE 1996) published by the Indian Institute of Mass Communication, New Delhi.

(Related and Suggested Websites retrieved on 25th September, 2022).

1. https://libguides.csusm.edu/news/different_news_types
2. <https://mydigitalnews.in/what-are-the-different-types-of-news>
<https://www.google.com/search?q=what+is+news&rlz>.
3. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Concept+of+news&rlz>.
4. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Definitions+of+news&rlz>.



SUBJECT: REPORTING	
COURSE CODE: MSM-523 A	AUTHOR: DR MANOJ DAYAL
LESSON NO.: 4	
NEWS AND VIEWS	

STRUCTURE

4.0 Learning Objectives

4.1 Introduction

4.2 News and Views

 4.2.1 News based on views

 4.2.2 Views based on News

 4.2.3 News as mother of Views

 4.2.4 Factors responsible for Views in News

4.3 Check your Progress

4.4 Summary

4.5 Keywords

4.6 Self- assessment test

4.7 Answer to check your progress

4.8 References/ Suggested readings

4.0 LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- To understand News and Views
- To explain news based on views
- To describe views based on news
- To explore factors responsible for views in news

4.1 INTRODUCTION



News is the soul of a newspaper and all other print media. Journalism is mainly related to news and journalists whether a desk person or field person, they primarily deal with news. But since news gives birth to views, so a journalist directly deals with news and indirectly deals with views. News also gives birth to previews, reviews and interviews.

Thus, newspaper does not only contain news. It contains views, reviews, previews, interviews, articles, features, editorials, columns, letters, feature article, featurized article, news feature. But a daily newspaper devotes most of its pages to news. It devotes only one page to views. If it is a voluminous paper in size, then it may devote two pages to views. One is called "Editorial page" and other is called "Op Ed Page" which is an "Editorial page". We often say "Editorial Page" also as "Edit page".

"Edit page" generally contains Editorials (Previously these were called "Leaders"), Special Article, Article, Featurised Article, Letters, Columns etc.

On the other hand "Op Ed Page" (Opposite to Editorial Page) generally contains reviews, previews, interviews etc.

These days even news pages contain news feature, featurised news, soft news, hard news, news analysis, backgrounders (Backgrounders are rarely in newspapers, mostly in a magazine). Sometimes even news is mixed with views which is generally described as highly debatable issue.

A newspaper also have magazines and pull outs as their weekly features or characteristics. Most of the newspapers have a newspaper sized (52 cm X 26 cm) magazine on Sunday. A few newspapers have Saturday magazine and Sunday magazine both. But a few more have Wednesday pull outs or Thursday pull outs etc.

Hence this lesson will be focussed on news, its behaviour, news value or news criteria, characteristics of good news writing, news writing, news and views their interrelations, news based on views, views based on news, news as mother of views, factors responsible for views in news, etc.

4.2 NEWS AND VIEWS



As discussed above even a newspaper contains views. A politically or economically influenced newspaper tries to propagate certain views not only through their "Edit page" or "Op Ed page", but even through their news pages which are again not described as a healthy trend.

Magazines are considered a better platforms for views. More so it is an ideally suitable place for even previews, reviews and interviews.

However, these days there is a new trend in journalism called " Magazinisation of Newspaper". Even newspapers have started giving a brief narration or profile near its nameplate above the folio line. They give small miniature of pictures here and also sub heads of inside stories. This is a visual approach of magazinisation. And there are mental approach of magazinisation of a newspaper. It is a matter of debate whether there should be magazinisation of a newspaper or not? With the tremendous growth of technologies, both newspapers and magazines have gone multi-coloured. Magazinisation of newspaper is sometimes described with an example that it is just like a boy wishes to look like a girl and vice-versa. Even a boy tries to adopt good traits of a girl and vice-versa. If it is unnecessary adoption of traits, then it is worth-criticising. But if it is desirable adoption of traits, then it is worth- appreciating. This is occurring in present modern society. So is the case with the newspaper and magazine. Hence, there is fast magazinisation of a newspaper and vice- versa. This debate does not end here. A debate is generally endless. However, this lesson writer is just trying to give a reflex of this emerging situation in the modern journalistic era.

Some media experts describe news and views as the two poles of the same maganet which cannot be separated from each other. They believe that a view is born with the birth of a news. Hence they believe that news should be mixed with views. But there is a golden rule of journalism that " Facts are sacred and comments free". According to this ideology both news and views should be separated.

It is important to mention here that when television came into being, there was a big threat to the basic existence of newspapers. This is because news was not only broadcast on the same day(unlike newspaper), but also presented eith the audio, visual, motion, text, animation, graphics etc. For example, a viewer has already seen the entire batting of Virat Kohli on television a day before. Then it



became a big threat as well as challenge for the newspapers how to present the news about Virat Kohli which the common audience has already viewed with great zeal and enthusiasm a day before.

Thereafter, the Editors' Guild of India called a meeting of the editors in Delhi and comprehensively discussed the television news issues. They decided to submit a memorandum to the Ministry of Information and Broadcasting not to broadcast news on Doordarshan and Doordarshan should remain only an Entertainment channel. Accordingly the delegation met the Minister and submitted the memorandum. After a month or so, the memorandum was turned down.

After that there was a tremendous change in the presentation of news of a newspaper. The tendencies of mixing views with the news started in a big way. This was mainly because of a heavy competition with the television. It became a question and issue of survival for the newspaper. Then again newspapers association recalled a bit competition with All India Radio in the similar way long way. Since that competition was not so big, so there was a very modern change in the behaviour, style and presentation of newspaper. In those days, cartoons and seriously analysed, organised and synthesized articles became the main attraction of newspapers.

However, after the big threat with the television and its channel Doordarshan, there were a revolutionary changes in the behaviour, style, content and presentation of almost all the newspaper in the competition.

There was a rapid emergence of elegant photographs, juicy scandals, interpretative reporting, mixing of views with the news, news analysis, news feature, featurized news, graphics, animation, internet survey on burning issues etc. Even there was tremendous growth of multi-coloured web offsets. Then the newspaper and often print media did survive due to the above reasons and a few strong traits of print media being a stable media. Not only that, there were floods of several newspapers and magazines in a variety of areas with generalisation, specialisation and specialisation within specialisation. Another similar phase come with more competition when the digital media and social media appeared. To compete with the digital media and social media, the newspapers aggravated with e- newspapers, website editions and newsportals. And now there is a new trend of convergence of all the media together. It led to the growth of audio- visual reporters for the website editions and portals of a



newspaper. Hence, present is the completely new era. Newspapers are still struggling for their upliftment specially due to social media. Yet another threat emerged due to MoJo (Mobile Journalism) and fast emerging citizen journalism. Newspapers are somehow still surviving with the gate- keeping and filtration model with a experienced team of reportes and sub- editors.

Factuality, accuracy, balance, objectivity and fairness are still considered to be the soul of journalism. Newspapers are still providing relatively more factuality, accuracy, balance, objectivity and fairness, thanks to their strong editorial and reporting staff. One cannot say that there is no vested interest in newspapers. Yes, like any other media, newspapers are also gripped with economic pressures, internal pressures and pressures. A well- known Editor- in- Chief of The Times of India, Sh. Girilal Jain used to described all these pressures as pleasures of journalism. No doubt, Sh. Jain is still exemplary for the new generation as he started his career as a proof reader and ended his career as an Editor- in- Chief.

Newspapers did manage to even compete with digital & social media having mobile based citizen journalism. And still growing tremendously with their website editions and portal editions. Now in the last one decade, newspapers are still facing a new threat. When a lot of professional journalists in a group have joined social media and mobile journalism. Now these professional journalists are working for different political parties and industrialists with their vested interest. Let us see how newspapers cope up with these new emerging challenges and how they again change their "News- views Approach Model".

4.2.1 NEWS BASED ON VIEWS

One may welcome the mixing of views with news in the newspapers in this cut-throat competitions with TV channels, social media, citizen journalism and even the newly emerging podcasting. But news reporting with certain previously occupied views is certainly a dangerous thing. It is basically a curse.

A news is selected with the news values, news criteria and news worthiness like impact, usefulness, prominence, uniqueness, divergence, conflict, contrast, geographical proximity, emotional proximity, timeliness, currency, personality, sex, violence, romance, numbers, size etc. Again there are certain



criteria for good news writing like factuality, accuracy, balance, objectivity, fairness, attribution, public interest, human interest, clarity, consciousness, commonness, correctness, credibility, completeness, readability etc. Further, news must follow inverted pyramid rules in most of the cases, if it is a hard news. It must also follow the basic rules of 5Ws and one H. Now there is emergence of 6Ws and one H. 6th W is the audience, i.e. "Whom". It cannot be ignored today specially in some of the specific cases.

News writing must also follow certain golden rules, murphy laws and precautionary measures like "If doubt, cut it out," "uncompromising attention to legal safety", "check cross- check and multi- check", "head- cut instead of hair-cut", throwing your readers to the dictionary", etc. In brief, this lesson writer will like to conclude if news is really based on views, then all your love labour will be lost. All your news criteria, golden rules, murphy laws and pre- cautionary measures will cut a sorry figure if the news is based on views. Conclusively views based on news may be welcome in this cut throat competition. But news based on views is still a curse in this modern era.

4.2.2 VIEWS BASED ON NEWS

As hinted above, views coming from news may be welcome as news is described as the mother of views. Views doesn't give birth to the news. On the contrary, it is the news which gives worth to the views. For example, the news of "Agni Veer" appeared in the newspapers. It aggravated the whole of the readers, audience and even public. And then there was a lot of opinion formation. If a news analyst gives his or her views in such event clarifying the audience with its pros and cons, then it is a welcome approach. But always remember, the factuality, accuracy, balance, objectivity and fairness of a news should not be disturbed under any circumstances.

Similarly, news feature, featurised news, soft news, interpretative news, juicy scandals are all welcome. But in no circumstances again the core of journalism, i.e., factuality, accuracy, balance, objectivity and fairness should not be at all compromised under any circumstances by a good journalist.

Yet another case study may be presented here. In early 80's "The Times of India" newspaper practiced and experimented a new model of journalism based on "Facts are sacred and comments free". They allowed their reporters to give their views/comments in almost all the news stories. But they kept it a



strict rule of the game that instead of mixing of views with the news, news and views should be presented separately without disturbing the basic elements of journalism. According to this rule, the reporter should write the news first and at the end there will be a small tailpiece with a sub head "Reporter's comments". This experiment of the Times of India did continue for almost two- three years. But it had its natural death due to cut- throat competition with the news bulletins, news channels, citizen journalism etc.

4.2.3 NEWS AS A MOTHER OF VIEWS

As explained above that news is the mother of the views. The entire veins of views are like several branches of the news events. News give birth to views. And views further aggravates reviews, previews and interviews. News is sacred like mother. Again it has the potentiality of productivity of a large number of views. It sometimes aggravates some debate also. With the thesis, anti- thesis and synthesis, an innovative view is generated over a particular event which was presented there in the form of a news. News generates views and views generates reviews, previews and interviews. The way a mother nurture her children, similarly news nurture views, reviews, previews and interviews. Nurturing in the sense that the entire views revolves around the base of the news. The entire veins of views are like branches of the news events.

While viewing we see the news from various angles like social, economic, political, cultural, educational, religious, spiritual. It is further surrounded with the inside views and outside views leading to a holistic views over a news. Similarly, it is the news which nurtures the review also. The entire review is centred round the news whether it is a book review or TV review or Film review etc. Based on the news or content, the review will try to find out something innovative into the event or the content, merits of the content, demerits of the contents or contents of features. Based on the news, the reviewer depicts the facts in such a manner that the audience decides whether to use the content or not. Like a book review or a TV review or a film review helps its audience to decide whether to read/ purchase the book or watch TV programme or the film.



Similarly, a preview of a book or television programme or film is primarily based on the news items hidden in the entire object or programme. Even in case of pre- testing or curtain raising, the same thing happen as these are all based on the news content enshrined into these.

Again an interview plan is always decided based on the relevance and importance of the news.

Further, all the articles, special articles, columns, letters, features, feature articles and even editorials are wholly and solely based on the overall perception of that particular news event.

Hence, it is wise- considering news as the mother of views. This very precept solves many problems of our entire journalistic norms and set-ups.

4.2.4 FACTORS RESPONSIBLE FOR VIEWS IN NEWS

Several factors are responsible in this situation.

First all of the mixing views with news occasionally makes the news more lively, attractive and fascinating.

Second, it facilitates the readers to easily understand the event of the news.

Third, it helps the readers to easily form an opinion about the event of the news.

Fourth, it helps compete with the other channels, bulletins, social media, mobile journalism and citizen journalism.

Fifth, if it is written strongly and cogently, then it can compete with organised citizen journalism which is fast emerging in this modern era.

These are all an extremely good merits of mixing views with news. But if it is not handled with care, then it can kill all the basic traits and primary elements of journalism like factuality, accuracy, balance objectivity, fairness, impact and usefulness. If views mixing is not tackled properly, it can destroy the basics of news criteria or news values like uncommonness, conflict, proximity, timeliness, personality



etc. Again if it is not executed with extra care, it can adversely influence all the golden rules, murphy laws and pre-cautionary measures of journalism.

Thus, it is crystal clear as to what are the factors responsible for views in news. But this process can make or break the gist of the story or the essence of the news if not handled with care.

4.3 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Note: 1) Use the space below for your answers.

2) Compare your answers with those given at the end of this lesson.

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION.

1. What does edit page generally contain ?

- (a) News
- (b) News analysis
- (c) Backgrounder
- (d) Editorial

2. Op Ed page generally contains :

- (i) News
- (j) Reviews, previews & interviews
- (k) Editorial
- (l) News analysis

3. Magazines are considered a better platform for :

- (a) News
- (b) Backgrounder
- (c) Views
- (d) Facts

**4. These days, there are magazinisation of :**

- (a) Magazines
- (b) Journals
- (c) Periodicals
- (d) Newspapers

5. News is the mother of :

- (a) Facts
- (b) Views
- (c) Backgrounder
- (d) None of the above

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS

1. Though there are views, reviews, previews and interviews in journalism, yet journalism is mainly related to
2. When television came into being, there was a big to the existence of the print media.
3. The Editors' of India convened a meeting of editors.
4. Views based on news may be welcomed, but news based on views is a
5. Citizen journalism is a journalism practiced by

4.4 SUMMARY

News is an account of recent event or opinion which is important or interesting or concerning. Views are comment generated out of news. News is “original, distinctive, Romantic, Thrilling, Unique, Curious, Quaint, Humorous, Odd and apt-to-be-talked-about.” News is something uncommon, unroutined and divergent which has public interest and which is fresh. When views comes out of the news ,it is a welcome approach as it is healthy in nature. When news is based on certain views, then it is



a curse, unhealthy and not worth-welcoming. There are so many factors responsible for views in news . First, competition with television, digital and social media. Second, it occasionally makes the news more lively. Third, it helps reader easily form an opinion. Fourth, it facilitates the readers to easily understand the event. Newspaper does not only contain news. It contains views, reviews, previews, articles, features, editorials, columns, letters, feature article, featurized article, news feature. But a daily newspaper devotes most of its pages to news. It devotes only one page to views or if it is a voluminous paper in size, then it may devote two pages to views. One is called "Editorial page" and other is called "Op Ed Page" which is an "Editorial page". We often say "Editorial Page" also as "Edit page". "Edit page" generally contains Editorials (Previously these were called "Leaders"), Special Article, Article, Featurised Article, Letters, Columns etc. On the other hand "Op Ed Page" generally contains reviews, previews, interviews etc. These days even news pages contain news feature, featurised news, soft news, hard news, news analysis, backgrounders (rarely in newspapers, mostly in a magazine). Sometimes even news is mixed with views which is generally described as highly debatable issue. A politically or economically influenced newspaper tries to propagate certain views not only through their "Edit page" or "Op Ed page", but even through their news pages which are again not described as a healthy trend. Magazines are considered a better platforms for views. More so it is an ideally suitable place for even previews, reviews and interviews.

However, these days there is a new trend in journalism called " Magazinisation of Newspaper". Even newspapers have started giving a brief narration or profile near its nameplate above the folio line. They give small miniature of pictures here and also sub heads of inside stories. Thus is a visual approach of magazinisation. And there are mental approach of magazinisation of a newspaper. It is a matter of debate whether there should be magazinisation of a newspaper or not, with the tremendous growth of technologies both newspapers and magazines have gone multi-coloured. Magazinisation of newspaper is sometimes described with an example that it is just like a boy wishes to look like a girl and vice-versa. Even a boy tries to adopt good traits of a girl and vice-versa. If it is unnecessary adoption of traits, then it is worth-criticising. But if it is desirable adoption of traits, then is worth- appreciating. This is occurring in present modern society. So is the case with the newspaper and magazine. Hence, there is fast magazinisation of a newspaper and vice- versa. This debate does not end here. A debate is generally endless. However, this lesson writer is just trying to give a reflex of this emerging situation in



the modern journalistic era. News give birth to views. And views further aggravates reviews, previews and interviews. News is sacred like mother. Again it has the potentiality of productivity of a large number of views. It sometimes aggravates some debate also with the thesis, anti- thesis and synthesis an innovative view is generated over a particular event which was presented there in the form of a news. News generates views and views generates reviews, previews and interviews. The way a mother nurture her children, similarly news nurture views, reviews, previews and interviews. Nurturing in the sense that the entire views revolves around the base of the news. The entire veins of views are like branches of the news events. While viewing we see the news from various angles like social, economic, political, cultural, educational, religious, spiritual. It is further surrounded with the inside views and outside views leading to a holistic views over a news. Similarly, it is the news which nurtures the review is centred round the news whether it is a boom review or TV review or Film review etc. Based on the news or content, the review will try to find out something innovative into the event or the content, merits of the content, demerits of the content features. Based on the news, the reviewer depicts the facts in such a manner that the audience decides whether to use the content or not. Like a boom review or a TV review or a film review helps its audience to decide whether to read/ purchase the book or watch TV programme or the film.

4.5 KEY WORDS

News: It is an account of recent event or opinion which is important or interesting or concerning.

Views: it is a comment generated out of news.

Meaning of News: News is “Original, Distinctive, Romantic, Thrilling, Unique, Curious, Quaint, Humorous, Odd and Apt-to-be-talked-about.”

Definitions of News: News is something uncommon, unroutined and divergent which has public interest and which is fresh.

Views based on News : When views comes out of the news ,it is a welcome approach as it is healthy in nature.



News based on views: When news is based on certain views, then it is a curse, unhealthy and not worth-welcoming.

Factors Responsible for Views in News: First, competition with television, digital and social media. Second, it occasionally makes the news more lively. Third, it helps reader easily form an opinion. Fourth, it facilitates the readers to easily understand the event.

4.6 SELF-ASSESSMENT TEST

1. What do you mean by News? Do you think mixing of views with news is a healthy trend? Comment.
2. Describe the inter-relations between news, views, reviews, previews and interviews.
3. What is News? Describe its important criteria.
4. Explain as to what are the factors responsible for views in news .
5. Write short notes on the followings:
 - (i) *News*,
 - (ii) *Views*
 - (iii) *Reviews*
 - (iv) *Previews*
 - (v) *Interviews*
 - (vi) *News Vs Views*
 - (vii) *Factors responsible for views in news*

4.7 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION

1. (d) Editorial
2. (b) Reviews, previews & interviews
3. (c) Views
4. (d) Newspapers
5. (b) Views

**B. FILL IN THE BLANKS**

1. News
2. Threat
3. Guild
4. Curse
5. Non-professionals

4.8. REFERENCES/SUGGESTED READINGS

1. Kamath,M.V. (1990) - "Professional Journalism" published by Vikas Publishing House Private Limited, New Delhi.
2. Shrivastav, K.M(1999)-"News Reporting and Editing" published by Sterling Publishing Private Limited, New Delhi.
3. Stovall,James Glen(2006)-"Writing for the Mass Media"6th edition,published by Pearson Education Inc. and Dorling Kindersley Publishing Inc.
4. Tewari,Arjun(1994)—“Jansanchar aur Hindi Patrakarita” published by Jaibharti Prakashan,Allahabad.
5. "Media Problems and Prospects (1983)" published by National Media Centre.
6. Rayudu, C.S. (1993) - "Media and Communication Management" published by Himalaya Published House, New Delhi.
7. COMMUNICATOR (VOL. XXXXI, NO. 28, APRIL - JUNE 1996) published by the Indian Institute of Mass Communication, New Delhi.

(Related and Suggested Websites retrieved on 25th September,2022)

1. https://libguides.csusm.edu/news/different_news_types
2. https://www.sportanddev.org/sites/default/files/downloads/how_to_write_for_news____views_2.pdf
3. <https://www.google.com/search?q=what+is+news&rlz>.
4. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Concept+of+news&rlz>.
5. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Definitions+of+news&rlz>.



SUBJECT: REPORTING	
COURSE CODE: MSM-523 A	AUTHOR: DR MANOJ DAYAL
LESSON NO.: 5	
METHODS & TECHNIQUES OF NEWS GATHERING	

STRUCTURE

5.0 Objective

5.1 Introduction

5.2 News gathering by readers

 5.2.2 News gathering by desk

 5.2.2.1 Foreign news agencies

 5.2.2.2 Indian news agencies

 5.2.2.3 Reporters/Correspondent

 5.2.2.4 Monitoring

 5.2.3 News gathering by reportorial staff

 5.2.3.1 Press release

 5.2.3.2 Press conference

 5.2.3.3 Interview

 5.2.3.4 Symposium

 5.2.3.5 Official reports

5.3 Check your progress

5.4 Summary

5.5 Keywords

5.6 Self-assessment test

5.7 Answer to check your progress

5.8 References/Suggested Readings

5.0 LEARNING OBJECTIVES



The objectives of this lesson are as follows-

- To understand methods and techniques of news gathering by readers.
- To find methods and techniques of news gathering by desk.
- To explore methods and techniques of news gathering by reporters/ correspondents.
- To monitor media minutely and meticulously
- To understand methods and techniques of news gathering by reportorial staff.

5.1 INTRODUCTION

News is the most important editorial content for the editorial department of a daily newspaper. In a newspaper, views are secondary. Reviews, previews and interviews are even tertiary. Most of the pages of the paper are covered by news. Only one or two pages are there for views.

News is gathered by many segments. Even readers collect news from different sources of media. More so if the reader is interested in journalism or that reader is a student of journalism doing the assignments of news gathering of yesterday events or weekly events at international, national, regional and local level.

From professional point of views news is also collected by the desk despite the fact that the news haunting is not the primary job of a news desk. The main task of a news desk is to make the best presentation of the news submitted by the reportorial staffs. On the other hand, reportorial staffs consisting of reporters and correspondents have to primarily gather the news for their organisation using different methods and techniques.

5.2 NEWS GATHERING

This activity is an important method and technique which is executed by both professionals, semi-professionals and non professionals. When it is carried out by readers interested in journalism or students of journalism executing some assignments, it is generally described as non-professional or semi-professional activities. But when it is performed by newsman, it is called professional activities. We all know that news section is divided into two parts in the editorial department of a daily newspaper: one is news room for editorial staffs and the other is reporters room for reportorial staff.



News room people have to mainly edit, give headlines, sub-heads and intro and polish the stories to make it worth-reading. But being news persons, editorial staffs also gather news as and when extremely required. Reportorial staffs are primarily responsible for news gathering and in this process, they use various news gathering methods and techniques which will be comprehensively discussed in this lesson.

5.2.1 NEWS GATHERING BY READERS

Readers are not called a professional news hauntings. But those who are active and interested readers, they may execute the activities of news gathering time and again in a non-professional, semi-professional and even professional manner as and when required. More so in this modern era, when the citizen journalism has reached from peak to pinnacle. Other kinds of active readers are those who are journalism students, performing such assignments of news gathering. That means only those readers who are interested in journalism and those who are in the process of becoming journalists do perform such activities. When such readers gain more experience and maturity, they may apply the methods and techniques of news gathering in a professional manner. In this fast growing era of citizen journalism, it is not possible for any newspaper organisation to reach every point and spot to gather news. Therefore, such news organisations request even the interested readers to collect some burning and public interest news with photographs from their locality. And such news organisations sometimes publish the citizen story with by lines or give some prize to them. In this way, newspaper organisations also create their own stringers for their own future requirements making a continuous line of action for news gathering. Readers generally gather news from different mass media like newspapers, radio, television and internet. Sometimes such serious readers walk down to a public library and they easily note down the international, national, regional and local news. They also keep apps of different news. Moreover, they get the news on Google news. Sometimes newspaper clippings are also sent through WhatsApp by such groups and is also put on Facebook or Twitter. In this way, an active reader collect news from newspaper, digital media, social media like Facebook, YouTube, Instagram, WhatsApp, Google, mobile apps, television and radio by using these in a sincere manner. They also check the factuality of a news on Google News, pictures on Google image and visuals on Google video. In this way such readers learn



to check even the fake news. These days even FM channels of radio has also become an important source of news gathering for readers.

5.2.2 NEWS GATHERING BY DESK

Sources of news are innumerable. If one has nose for news he can get it while walking on the streets or even casually talking to the people. Sometimes news automatically comes to the newspaper office without any effort just because it is a newspaper. Source can be hard or weak. A source is said to be hard when the facts of a news come from the horse's mouth. On the state government policies, for example, the Chief Minister or other ministers, top officials of the concerned ministries of departments, etc are the hard sources. But they cannot be treated to be hard enough regarding matters that do not fall within the purview of their own functioning. Press releases and briefings by spokesperson are equally hard.

5.2.2.1 INTERNATIONAL NEWS AGENCIES

Moreover, desk persons get news from international news agencies like Reuter, AP, AFP, TASS, etc. Such agencies directly send the various social, economic, political, educational, cultural, religious and spiritual news of the world directly to the desk. Such stories are written by the professionals. So these don't require much effort while editing. Such stories are painlessly edited.

5.2.2.2 NATIONAL NEWS AGENCIES

Further, there are several national news agencies like Press Trust of India (PTI), United News of India (UNI), Bhasha, Univarta, ANI, etc. which provide national news of all varieties to the desk. Again such stories are painlessly edited since these are prepared by professionally trained journalists. Here PTI and UNI are English news agencies while Bhasha and Univarta are Hindi news agencies which largely covers the Hindi belt.

5.2.2.3 REPORTERS / CORRESPONDENTS



Desk of an editorial department of a daily newspaper gets major news items from there on reporters and correspondents. Here the chief reporter plays an active role. What stories did the paper miss? What stories were covered adequately? Where did the rival newspaper score over his? He is accountable to all these. Similarly senior reporters and reporters from different beats are responsible for satisfactorily covering their concern beats. The chief of the bureau, special correspondents, principal correspondents, correspondents, etc. are all responsible for covering their respective areas and reporting to the desk accordingly. Even foreign correspondent who is generally very senior in rank takes care of the news of all varieties of the country where he or he has been posted. Other than that there are column-wise paid stringers who take care of news of their area and send news directly to the desk. The editorial staffs generally take a lot of pains in editing the copies of cub reporters and stringers since they are not so trained nor are they so experienced.

5.2.2.4 MONITORING

There are proper provisions for radio, television, internet, telephones, etc. Sometimes, when there are some confusion about the news stories, its incompleteness, its non-availability or its loopsidedness, then the desk people definitely take some help from the available media. If something news is repeatedly getting released in the radio bulletin, but there is no mention of such news by the own correspondents or reporters including the news agencies then the radio bulletins help and give a clue. For even better stories, the news editor may contact their own correspondents and reporters. In this way, other media are minutely and meticulously monitored.

So in this case of television channels, since most of the work of the news room is executed by the sub editorial desk, the Deputy news editor (DNE) or the News editor (NE) or both go to the TV room for some chit-chat or relaxation over a cup of tea. Meanwhile, when they view some breaking news over TV channels, then they compare the stories of their own correspondents and reporters including their own subscribed news agencies. If they feel that some relevant portions of the event are missing in the copies, then they ask and re-ask their own field staff to follow up.

So is the case with Internet. And sometimes that editorial staff uses all the available media and derive certain conclusions and compare their own copies. Other than DNE or NE, sub editors sometimes also



use radio, TV, internet, especially when they come an hour before their duty time. Then that sub editor may draw the attention of the DNE or NE or his chief sub editor about the news. In fact, all the editorial staff keep on enriching their knowledge about events with the help of other newspapers, radio, television, internet, etc. and directly or indirectly help the desk and the reportorial staff.

5.2.3 NEWS GATHERING BY REPORTORIAL STAFF

Reportorial staff consists of own reporters and own correspondents. Even own subscribed news agencies are treated as reporters with well-edited copies as these copies are screened by the agency desk. Yet it is further screened by the news desk of the newspaper. Reportorial staff are the major source of news. They are the most reliable and authentic source. There is no need for check, cross-check and multi-check. These staff adopt several methods and techniques for news gathering like press release, press conference, spot visit, interview, symposium, official reports, etc.

5.2.3.1 PRESS RELEASE

Reportorial staffs get a lot of press releases. Press release, press note, press statement or press hand out or simply hand out are the same thing. It is also called news release. It is a statement on behalf of the government, political parties, institutions or even an individual given to the press. It is released by Press Information Bureau (PIB), State Public Relations Departments, District Public Relations Departments and several other registered bodies. When it comes from unregistered or unauthorized bodies, it is need to be checked, cross-checked and multi-checked.

5.2.3.2 PRESS CONFERENCE

Press release is a one-way communication. When such events which need discussions, dialogues or two-way communications between the press and the authority, then a press conference is organised by the authority.

It is a formal conference of newsmen invited by a dignitary in which after initial announcement, he answers questions of the pressmen. It is also called news conference or news briefing or press briefing or simply briefing. That is to say that press briefing is similar to press conference in which pressmen are



told something and they can ask questions. The briefing is done by spokesman who is authorised to make a statement and answers questions on behalf of a dignitary, department or party.

A minister holds a press conference, while a spokesman of the minister's secretariat briefs the press. A political party president addresses a press conference while a party general secretary briefs the press. Hence, there is a hairline difference between press conference and briefing, but press conference sounds more formal, while briefing is less formal. Thus, press conference is an old and important method and technique of news gathering.

5.2.3.3 SPOT REPORTING

Spot visit of the concerned beat is treated as very authentic method and technique of news gathering. In the modern journalism, this tendency is having its natural death especially due to lack of time. But it needs to be revived.

5.2.3.4 INTERVIEW

It is yet another important method and technique of news gathering. When dignitaries are properly interviewed by reportorial staff, it makes a very good story. This is mainly because it is based on interpersonal communication where continuous interactions and frequent feedbacks are possible. Due to these traits, it sometimes create not only an indepth stories, but interesting too. Sometimes even news agencies reporters/ correspondents creed stories based on interview which are happily and enthusiastically published by newspapers and magazines. Hence, formal interviews, informal interviews, structured interviews, unstructured interviews, indepth interviews have recently emerged as tool of reporting a news or even writing a feature.

5.2.3.5 SYMPOSIUM

News gathering is also executed with the method and technique of symposium. Basically, a symposium is a type of interview in which one question is asked to so many people of different varieties and accordingly a stories is compiled. For example, when union or state budget is released, the journalist ask only one question : "How is the budget?". And he asks this question to so many people like farmers,



salaried class, businessman, housewives and so on and compiles a lovely story in the form of budget reactions. And sometimes such stories become very effective with attractive headlines like "Union budget: a Monalissa's smile" or "Pranab ke budget se holi ke rang mein bhang".

5.2.3.6 OFFICIAL REPORTS

Such reports published by government or semi-government bodies serve as important tool of news gathering. A campus reporter may get a lot of important news informations with the help of annual report or minutes of executive councils or academic councils or courts or planning boards.

Thus, news gathering methods and techniques are very wide, broad and extensive. Right from readers to desk and from desk to reportorial staff, it is a complete cycle of news gathering for the effective production of newspaper with standard news contents, elegant photographs, fascinating cartoons, superb animations, juicy scandals and so on.

5.3 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Note: 1) Use the space below for your answers.

2) Compare your answers with those given at the end of this lesson.

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION.

1. What is the most important editorial content ?

- (a) News
- (b) News analysis
- (c) Backgrounder
- (d) Editorial

2. What type of news hauntrs are readers ?

- (a) Professional
- (b) Non-professionals



- (c) Active
- (d) Pro-active

3. When does the desk work as news haunters?

- (a) Generally
- (b) Often
- (c) In emergency and crisis
- (d) Always

4. These days, there are magazinisation of :

- (a) Magazines
- (b) Journals
- (c) Periodicals
- (d) Newspapers

5. News is the mother of :

- (a) Facts
- (b) Views
- (c) Backgrounder
- (d) None of the above

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS

1. Most of theof the paper are covered by news.
2. Reportorial staff are primarily for news gathering.
3. Readers are integral part of journalism.
4. Stringers are not full-time employees of a newspaper, but they are column-wise.
- 5.. Citizen journalism is a journalism handled by



5.4 SUMMARY

In a newspaper, views are secondary. Reviews, previews and interviews are even tertiary. Most of the pages of the newspapers are covered by news. Only one or two pages are there for views. News is gathered by many segments. Even readers collect news from different sources of media. More so if the reader is interested in journalism or that reader is a student of journalism doing the assignments of news gathering of yesterday events or weekly events at international, national, regional and local level. From professional point of views news is also collected by the desk despite the fact that the news haunting is not the primary job of a news desk. The main task of a news desk is to make the best presentation of the news submitted by the reportorial staffs. On the other hand, reportorial staffs consisting of reporters and correspondents have to primary gather the news for their organisation using different methods and techniques. We all know that new section is divided into two parts in the Editorial department of a daily newspaper: one is news room for editorial staffs and the other is reporters room for reportorial staff. News room people have mainly edit, give headlines, sub-heads, into and polish the stories to make it worth-reading. But being news persons, editorial staffs also gather news as and when extremely required. Reportorial staffs are primarily responsible for news gathering and in this process, they use various news gathering methods and techniques. News organisations request even the interested readers to collect some burning and public interest news with photographs from their locality. And such news organisations sometimes publish the citizen story with by lines or give some prize to them. In this way, newspaper organisations also create their own stringers for their own future requirements making a continuous line of action for news gathering. Readers generally gather news from different mass media like newspapers, radio, television and internet. Sometimes such serious readers walk down to a public library and they easily note down the international, national, regional and local news. They also keep apps of different news. Moreover, they get the news on Google news. Sometimes newspaper clippings are also sent through WhatsApp by such groups and is also put on Facebook or Twitter. In this way, an active reader collect news from newspaper, digital media, social media like Facebook, YouTube, Instagram, WhatsApp, Google, mobile apps, television and radio by using these in a sincere manner. News gathering is an important method and technique which is executed by professionals, semi-professionals and non professionals. When it is carried out by readers interested in journalism or students of journalism executing some assignments, it is generally described as non-professional or



semi-professional activities. But when it is performed by newsmen, it is called professional activities. Readers are not called a professional news hauntings. But those who are active and interested readers, they may execute the activities of news gathering time and again in a non-professional, semi-professional and even professional manner as and when required. More so in this modern era, when the citizen journalism has reached from peak to pinnacle. Other kind of active readers are those who are journalism students, performing such assignments of news gathering. That means only those readers who are interested in journalism and those who are in the process of becoming journalists do performs such activities. Desk people haunts news only in a moment of crisis and emergency. When the reportorial staffs are on mass-leave or strike or the situation of the city is such that they cannot go for news haunting, then only desk people have to do this assignments. For example, during 2nd wave of covid, there were such crisis and whoever were on duty performed such task in a cooperative and collaborative manner. But desk people keep on updating, remain prepared and sometimes even creatively add something by calling the attention of the reportorial staff. Reportorial staff consists of own reporters and own correspondents. Even own subscribed news agencies are treated as reporters with well-edited copies as these copies are screened by the agency desk. Yet it is further screened by the news desk of the newspaper. Reportorial staff are the major source of news. They are the most reliable and authentic source. There is no need for check, cross-check and multi-check. These staff adopt several methods and techniques for news gathering like press release, press conference, spot visit, interview, symposium, official reports, etc.

5.5 KEY WORDS

News Gathering: This activity is an important method and technique which is executed by professionals, semi-professionals and non professionals. When it is carried out by readers interested in journalism or students of journalism executing some assignments, it is generally described as non-professional or semi-professional activities. But when it is performed by newsmen, it is called professional activities.

News Gathering by Readers: Readers collect news from different sources of media. More so if the reader is interested in journalism or that reader is a student of journalism doing the assignments of news



gathering of yesterday events or weekly events at international, national, regional and local level. Such readers do participate in social media non-professionally and sem-professionally.

News Gathering Desk: Desk people haunts news only in a moment of crisis and emergency. When the reportorial staffs are on mass-leave or strike or the situation of the city is such that they cannot go for news haunting, then only desk people have to do this assignments. For example, during 2nd wave of covid, there were such crisis and whoever were on duty performed such task in a cooperative and collaborative manner. But desk people keep on updating, remain prepared and sometimes even creatively add something by calling the attention of the reportorial staff.

News Gathering by Reportorial Staff : Reportorial staff consists of own reporters and own correspondents. Even own subscribed news agencies are treated as reporters with well-edited copies as these copies are screened by the agency desk. Yet it is further screened by the news desk of the newspaper. Reportorial staff are the major source of news. They are the most reliable and authentic source. There is no need for check, cross-check and multi-check. These staff adopt several methods and techniques for news gathering like press release, press conference, spot visit, interview, symposium, official reports, etc.

5.6 SELF-ASSESSMENT TEST

1. What do you mean by News? How is it gathered ?
2. Describe the inter-relations between news, views, reviews, previews and interviews.
3. What is news gathering? Describe its important methods and techniques.
4. Explain news gathering by readers.
5. Why do the readers gather news in a non-professional and sem-professional manner ? Describe.
6. Throw light on the news gathering by the desk people.Under what circumstances do they gather news ?Elaborate.
7. Describe the news gathering methods and techniques adopted by the reportorial staffs of a daily newspaper.
8. Write short notes on the followings:
 - (i) *News*



- (ii) *News gathering*
- (iii) *News gathering techniques*
- (iv) *News gathering by readers*
- (v) *News gathering by desk*
- (vi) *News gathering by reportorial staffs*
- (vii) *Reviews*
- (viii) *Previews*
- (ix) *Interviews*
- (x) *News Vs Views.*
- (xi) *Factors responsible for views in news*

5.7 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION

1. (a) News
2. (b) Non-professionals
3. (c) In emergency and crisis
4. (d) Newspapers
5. (b) Views

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS

1. Pages
2. Responsible
3. Citizen
4. Paid
5. Non-professionals

5.8. REFERENCES/SUGGESTED READINGS

1. Kamath, M.V. (1990) - "Professional Journalism" published by Vikas Publishing House Private Limited, New Delhi.



-
2. Shrivastav, K.M(1999)-“News Reporting and Editing” published by Sterling Publishing Private Limited, New Delhi.
 3. Stovall, James Glen(2006)-“Writing for the Mass Media”6th edition, published by Pearson Education Inc. and Dorling Kindersley Publishing Inc.
 4. Tewari, Arjun(1994)—“Jansanchar aur Hindi Patrakarita” published by Jaibharti Prakashan, Allahabad.
 5. "Media Problems and Prospects (1983)" published by National Media Centre.
 6. Rayudu, C.S. (1993) - "Media and Communication Management" published by Himalaya Published House, New Delhi.
 7. COMMUNICATOR (VOL. XXXXI, NO. 28, APRIL - JUNE 1996) published by the Indian Institute of Mass Communication, New Delhi.

(Related and Suggested Websites retrieved on 25th September, 2022)

1. https://libguides.csusm.edu/news/different_news_types
2. <https://egyankosh.ac.in/bitstream/123456789/57129/1/Unit%203.pdf>
3. <https://libraryguides.missouri.edu/j2100/j2100news/tools>
4. https://www.sportanddev.org/sites/default/files/downloads/how_to_write_for_news___views_2.pdf
5. <https://www.google.com/search?q=what+is+news&rlz>.
6. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Concept+of+news&rlz>.
7. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Definitions+of+news&rlz>.



SUBJECT: REPORTING	
COURSE CODE: MSM-523 A	AUTHOR: DR MANOJ DAYAL
LESSON NO.: 6	
STRUCTURE OF NEWS REPORT	

STRUCTURE

6.0 Learning objectives

6.1 Introduction

6.2 Structure of News Report

 6.2.1 Inverted Pyramid Style

 6.2.2 Rationale of Inverted Pyramid Style

 6.2.3 Present Validity of Inverted Pyramid Style

 6.2.4 5 Ws and 1 H

 6.2.5 Emerging concept of 6 Ws

6.3 Check Your Progress

6.4 Summary

6.5 Keywords

6.6 Self-Assessment Test

6.7 Answers to Check Your Progress

6.8 References/Suggested Readings

6.0 LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this lesson you will be able to:

- Understand Structure of News Report
- Know the Inverted Pyramid Style
- Describe the rationale of Inverted Pyramid Style



- Discuss the present validity of Inverted Pyramid Style
- Understand 5Ws and 1H
- Know the emerging concept of 6Ws

6.1 INTRODUCTION

News is something new, unique, exceptional, rare with the reasonable degree of public interest and desirable amount of freshness. It is written on the lines and basis of news worthiness. News has several criteria like timelines proximity, personality, contrast, conflict, etc.

News is a reflection of the social events. It is often described as "mirror of the society". It is highly perishable and mostly dies in 12-15 hours. Hence it is written hurriedly also. But it is not written haphazardly. It follows some norms, some protocols, some outline and some structure. Its structure is well defined called "inverted pyramid style". This style is very old and still surviving to a great extent. What is its rationality? what is its validity today? What is the concept of 5W and 1H? what is the emerging concept of 6W? We will discuss all these points step by step and one by one in this lesson.

6.2 STRUCTURE OF NEWS REPORT

News has become outlined and structured in a particular style. This structure is considered to be an essential base and foundation of a news report. The stability and consistency of this structure is vital, relevant and important. Its structure is well defined as "Inverted Pyramid Style". This style is very old and has developed in journalism over the years. It definitely helps the reader understand and grasp the news story immediately. Hence it is highly instrumental for the readers who do not have enough time to read the whole story. It also helps the sub editors who can easily discard as much of the story from the tail without affecting its reliability.

6.2.1 INVERTED PYRAMID STYLE

This is such a style in which the most important part of the facts is written in the very first paragraph called "Intro or Lead". This is written in order of news worthiness. Then comes the second most important part of the events. Thereafter the third most important part is presented. In this way it creates



an inverted pyramid which is described as "Inverted Pyramid Style" or "Inverted Pyramid Structure". This means the pyramid is constructed when the news is written in the descending order of importance. For example, the cause of an event is less important and the consequence is more important. Hence consequence will be treated as the most important and will go in the first paragraph as per the inverted pyramid style. Thus a news is never written like a fictional story or like a film story where the consequence is put under hold and suspense for a long time. Let us take an example, Draupadi Murmu suffered many personal tragedies between 2009 and 2014, she lost her husband, two sons, mother and brother. In 2009, one of her sons died under mysterious circumstances. According to report dating back to 2009, Laxman Murmu (25) was forced in an unconscious state in his bed.

Hence, Draupadi Murmu suffered a lot and forced even a lot of poverty stricken circumstances. Whatever maybe her circumstances, but she is fortunate enough to defeat Mr. Yashwant Sinha by a big margin in the recently concluded presidential election and became the first tribal president.

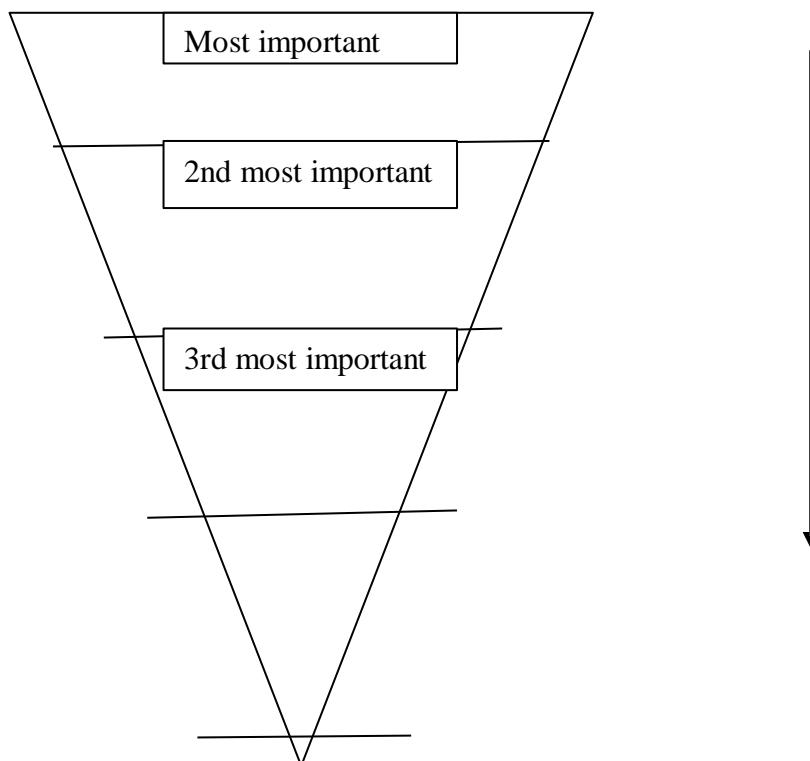
Now the consequence is that Draupadi Murmu became the first tribal President despite all odds and even. Despite the horror of poverty and death of her kids, kiths and kins kept her haunting.

Hence the headline:

Draupadi Murmu to become the first tribal President of India.

New Delhi: Draupadi Murmu defeats Mr. Yashwant Sinha in the Presidential election and elected to become the first tribal President of India.

Then her rest of the story in the descending order of importance will follow.



(Fig. 1.1: Drawn by Author's Scholar Arjoo Sharma)

Descending order of importance

6.2.2 RATIONALE OF INVERTED PYRAMID STYLE

Hence, a valid and very relevant question arises as to why inverted pyramid style is followed even today to a great extent. There are three straightforward reasons. First, it helps the readers to go through the headline and one or two paragraphs from the top. It saves a lot of time between their morning cup of tea and office time. It is important to mention here that the headline is mostly based on the first paragraph of a news story. Thus headlines are said to be de facto opinion makers of the society.

Second, it helps the copy editors in a quick and comfortable editing if the reporter has followed the inverted pyramid style. It also leads to effective editing, effective heading and effective lead of the story. This is because the sub editor can give more time and attention to the creative skills on the copy editing.



Third it helps the make-up editor also to cut from the bottom to fit the news story into the stipulated space. This process hardly takes anytime specially when there is a mad rush in the newspaper production in the night of beginning of the deadline of first edition.

6.2.3 PRESENT VALIDITY OF INVERTED PYRAMID STYLE

Due to above mentioned rationale of inverted pyramid style, this is still very much valid and applicable in case of hard news. And again, it is important to mention here that the majority of news items in any newspaper come under the category of hard news.

But in the present era, both newspapers and news agencies have also started mixing views with news. Not only that, there is a growing trend of new feature, featurised news, news analysis, backgrounder, interpretative exclusives and investigated stories.

Why this trend grew so fast in the present era? As a matter of fact when television came into being in India, newspapers owners and editors both got scared that their news business will certainly face a depression and recession. This is mainly because news is already presented on Doordarshan with motion, sound, text and gradually colourful combinations also cropped up and propped up.

As a result of serious meeting of Editors' Guild of India took place in Delhi in which majority of chief editors, editor in chief and editors opined that news must be banned on Doordarshan otherwise no power on this earth can stop newspapers from major destruction and complete failure.

Thereafter it was resolved by the Editors' Guild that the news should be presented on the Doordarshan in the interest of survival and subsistence of newspapers. Then the Guild submitted a memorandum to the Ministry of Information and Broadcasting demanding that no news should be presented on Doordarshan and Doordarshan should remain only an entertainment channel.

Somehow this proposal of Editors' Guild of India was turned down and hence there was a big chaos among newspaper editors and journalists.

Then onwards, newspapers focused on juicy scandals, elegant photographs, animations, visual news features, featurised news, backgrounders, news analysis, interpretative exclusives and investigative



stories with multi-colour approach for their survival and subsistence. With such struggle to compete with electronic media, newspapers not only survived but there were floods of newspapers in the market. History reveals that when radio came into existence, there was a threat to newspapers. But ultimately both radio and television turned out to be supplementary and complementary for newspaper and print media.

Similarly there is no threat to newspapers and print media with the digital /social media. This is because they have different audiences who have different approaches and mind sets .

And several researchers reveal the fact that no media affects the other media if they follow healthy approach of competition and all the media are supplementary and complementary to each other. They help grow each other qualitatively as well as quantitatively.

Finally, What I mean to say that as to why newspapers and news agencies have started mixing views with news and experimenting with news features, featurised news, news analysis, backgrounders, interpretative exclusives and investigative stories. In all such situations the inverted pyramid style is not followed at all. In addition, inverted pyramid style is not followed in sports news and shares/ debentures news.

For example:

1. Intro: Victory (most important), narration in the middle in chronological order and scores at the end which is the second most important part.
2. Shares/debentures news is generally presented in alphabetical order.

Thus we may conclude that in almost 25 to 30 per cent cases, inverted pyramid style is not followed. But 70 per cent of major news items are still hard news, where inverted pyramid style is strictly followed. These hard news items are still the foundation of our newspapers, extremely helpful for readers, copy editors and make up editors.



6.2.4 FIVE WS AND ONE H

This is an integral part of structure of news report because 5W and 1H from the outlines for the news structure. As we all know 5Ws and one H means as follows:

W: Who

W: What

W: When

W: Where

W: Why

H: How

Thus five Ws and one H are important ingredients or elements or components of news. Even in a single column small news story, the reporter must try to follow this formula. This brings some sort of completeness in the news story. In big story this thumb rule is followed with the help of several para breaks. Let us discuss one small example of news.

W (Who): Mr. NarendraModi, the Prime Minister of India

W (What): Our Indian planning should be reverted and strated from below

W (Where): India International Centre, New Delhi

W (When): Today evening

W (Why): This is because planning from below is more democratic in nature.

H (How): Since the planning will incorporate the opinion of the last person, it will not only be democratic but decentralized too. Hence there will be a block level planning, a district level planning, a regional planning and at the end there will be a national planning. Thus instead of imposing the



planning from the top we will plan to start it from below. The above explanation is a simple explanation of the news writing technique 5Ws and one H.

The news maybe briefly written as follows:

Planning from bottom is the need of the hour: Modi

New Delhi, 31 August: Mr Narendra Modi, the Prime Minister of India, said today at India International Centre that our Indian planning should be reverted and started from below. While inaugurating a seminar on "Indian planning: Problems and Prospects" organised by "The Economic Times", the Prime Minister said "This is because the planning from below is more democratic in nature."

Mr. Modi futher said that since the planning would incorporate the opinion of the last person, it would not only be democratic but decentralized too. Hence there would be a block level planning a, district level planning, a regional planning and at the end there would be a national planning. Thus, instead of imposing the planning from the top we would plan to start that from below, the Prime minister added.

Explanation: Hence, in this case 5Ws have come in the first paragraph. The element "Why" (means reason) is also there in the first paragraph as stated "This is because the planning from below is more democratic in nature. Again the element "How" (reason with explanation) will carry forward in rest of the paragraphs following a suitable sequence as stated "Since the planning will incorporate the opinion of the last person it will not only be democratic, but decentralized too. Hence, there will be a block-level planning,a district-level , a regional planning and at the and there will be the national planning. Thus, instead of imposing the planning from top we will plan to start it from below.

In the news writing while presenting it in the indirect narration (as written in the news) in the previous paragraph) the word "Will" has been converted into "Would" and "It" converted into "That".

6.2.5 EMERGING CONCEPT OF 6Ws

There is a modification and improvement in fiveWs concept with the addition of 6th 'W' called "Whom". "Whom" here means the audience. Earlier, audience was often ignored in news writing or the outline of news structure.



But at present almost all media give extra importance to the audience in terms of creation of "Audience Research Cell" "Audience Research Officer" and so on and so forth.

For example: 1.Addressing the scientists, the UGC Chairperson said this, this and this.

2. Addressing the Vice Chancellor, the Chancellor said this ,this and this.

Here the audience that is 6th W has been given new importance and of course the news content will drastically change with the change in the audience as 6 W is the emerging concept with an improvement and notification in the concept of five Ws and one H.

6.3 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Note: 1) Use the space below for your answers.

2) Compare your answers with those given at the end of this lesson.

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION.

1. What is generally the structure of news?

- (a) Pyramid structure
- (b) Triangular structure
- (c) Inverted pyramid structure
- (d) Cylindrical structure

2. News is written in the following order of importance:

- (a) Ascending
- (b) Descending.
- (c) Horizontal
- (d) Vertical

3. Do you think inverted pyramid structure is applicable to sports news ?

- (a) Strongly yes
- (b) Yes



- (c) Strongly No
- (d) No

4. Which is the 6th W that is emerging :

- (a) Who
- (b) Where
- (c) Whom
- (d) When

5. What change has emerged in modern intro/lead ?

- (a) Clubbing all five Ws in the intro/lead
- (b) Avoid overcrowding of all the five Ws in the intro/lead
- (c) What lead
- (d) Who lead

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS:

1. Invertedstructure is used in the hard news even today.
2. News is something uncommon with.....and recency.
3. Irrespective of good or bad, news is described as.....of the society.
4. In news intro/lead writing, the following becomes the most important.....
5. Inverted pyramid structure is even today.

6.4 SUMMARY

Structure is a broad and wide term which includes style, format, approach, etc. Structure of news is described as inverted pyramid which is the depiction of an event in a descending order of importance. Here, the consequence of an event is more important than the cause of the event. News is never written in a chronological order like a backgrounder or a general story or a fiction. A news structure also



includes five Ws and one H when we take the word “Structure” in a wider perspective and broader spectrum. Inverted pyramid style or format or structure is extremely important in news writing not only from the production point of view. But it is also important from the readers’ point of view. The concept of 5th W, i.e., “Whom” has emerged recently as audience of a news has become very important in the present competitive era of news writing. If the audience is generalized, then the 6th W (Whom) may be avoided. But if the audience is specialized or particularized or specific, then the 6th W (Whom) must be incorporated in the news writing.

6.5 KEY WORDS

- 1. News:** News is an account of recent event or opinion which is important or interesting or concerning. News is “original, distinctive, Romantic, Thrilling, Unique,Curious,Quaint,Humorous,Oddand apt-to-be-talked-about.” News is something uncommon, unroutined and divergent which has public interest and which is fresh.
- 2. Inverted Pyramid:** It is reverse pyramid which covers news or the event in the descending order of importance.
- 3. Five Ws & One H : W: Who**

W: What

W: When

W: Where

W: Why

H: How

- 4. Validity of Inverted Pyramid:** Except for the hard news,inverted pyramid structure is becoming outdated.
- 5. 6th W:** It is “Whom” which is used for specific or specialized or particularized audience in a news story.
- 6. Structure:** It is broader and wider term which includes format,style and outline .
- 7. Style:** It is the approach or the manner in which the news is written like 5 Ws and One H may be described as a style also.



8. **Format:** In specific sense, the inverted pyramid is the format of news but in broader sense inverted pyramid is the structure of news.

6.6 SELF-ASSESSMENT TEST

1. What do you mean by News? Discuss briefly the structure of a news report.
2. Discuss the inverted pyramid style with suitable examples.
3. Why is inverted pyramid structure of news becoming outdated and to what extent ? Explain.
4. Describe the concept of five Ws and one H with suitable examples.
5. Explain the emerging concept of 6th W with relevant examples.
6. Write short notes on the followings:
 - a) News
 - b) Inverted Pyramid format
 - c) Five Ws and One H
 - d) 6th W
 - e) Validity of Inverted Pyramid.
 - f) Descending order of event's importance
 - g) News worthiness
 - h) Mirror of the society
 - i) Torch of the society

6.7 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION

1. (c) Inverted Pyramid Structure
2. (b) Descending
3. (d) No
4. (d) Whom
5. (b) Avoid overcrowding of all the five Ws in the intro/lead.

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS



1. Pyramid
2. Public interest
3. Mirror
4. Consequence of the event
5. Partly

6.8 REFERENCES/SUGGESTED READINGS

1. Kamath,M.V. (1990) - "Professional Journalism" published by Vikas Publishing House Private Limited, New Delhi.
2. Shrivastav, K.M(1999)-"News Reporting and Editing" published by Sterling Publishing Private Limited, New Delhi.
3. Stovall,James Glen(2006)-"Writing for the Mass Media"6thedition,published by Pearson Education Inc. and Dorling Kindersley Publishing Inc.
4. Tewari,Arjun(1994)—“Jansancharaur Hindi Patrakarita” published by JaibhartiPrakashan,Allahabad.
5. "Media Problems and Prospects (1983)" published by National Media Centre.
6. Rayudu, C.S. (1993) - "Media and Communication Management" published by Himalaya Published House, New Delhi.
7. COMMUNICATOR (VOL. XXXXI, NO. 28, APRIL - JUNE 1996) published by the Indian Institute of Mass Communication, New Delhi.

(Related and Suggested Websites retrieved on 25th September,2022).

1. <https://edis.ifas.ufl.edu/publication/WC191>
2. <https://www.google.com/search?q=what+is+news&rlz>.
3. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Concept+of+news&rlz>.
4. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Definitions+of+news&rlz>.



SUBJECT: REPORTING	
COURSE CODE: MSM-523 A	AUTHOR: DR MANOJ DAYAL
LESSON NO.: 7	
TECHNIQUES OF NEWS WRITING	

STRUCTURE

- 7.0 Learning Objectives
- 7.1 Introduction
- 7.2 Techniques of News Writing
 - 7.2.1 Role of Word Power
 - 7.2.2 Inverted Pyramid Rule
 - 7.2.3 Five Ws and One H
 - 7.2.4 7 Cs
 - 7.2.5 Golden Rules
- 7.3 Check Your Progress
- 7.4 Summary
- 7.5 Key Words
- 7.6 Self-Assessment Test
- 7.7 Answer to Check Your Progress
- 7.8 References/Suggested Readings

7.0 LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this lesson you will be able to:

- Understand techniques of news writing
- Know the role of word power
- Discuss inverted pyramid rule



- Describe five Ws and one H
- Explain seven Cs
- Throw light on golden rules

7.1 INTRODUCTION

Writing is an art. It is a craft. It goes on improving through trial-and-error method. It gets a professional touch after a prolonged effort. Writing is like cleaning a room with a broom. Each time you clean you get some dirt. After continuous effort, it becomes perfectly clean. Similarly writing demands continuous and effortless cleaning. If you enjoy this you are in the process of becoming a writer.

Writing is a self-learning, self-developing and self-propelling process. Each time you write, read, correct, recorrect, write and read. If you really enjoy this process, you are more and more in the process of becoming a writer. News writing, on the other hand, is an integral part of journalistic writing. It is rather a major part of media organization specially a newspaper organization. This is because excluding advertisement and one editorial page all other pages are full of news: Almost similar is the case with the news channel news bulletin and all other news media.

News writing is a specific kind of art and craft. It has a strong deadline. Hence, it has not only to be collected hurriedly, but also written quickly with factuality accuracy, balance, objectivity, fairness etc.

7.2.1 ROLE OF WORD POWER

Any writing is the outcome of word power. This is because word is like a brick in the house and flower in the garland. If the brick is strong the house will also be strong. Again if the flower is fresh and beautiful, the garland will also be fresh and beautiful. Hence words in the news should be strong, appropriate, meaningful, easily understandable, effective etc. and for that we need strong word power called vocabulary.

If the news writer has a good stock of words, he can choose the most appropriate word for most appropriate sentence at the most appropriate place. It is like you have a variety of flowers, you can make a beautiful and fascinating garland. If you have a variety of colours, you can make a highly creative



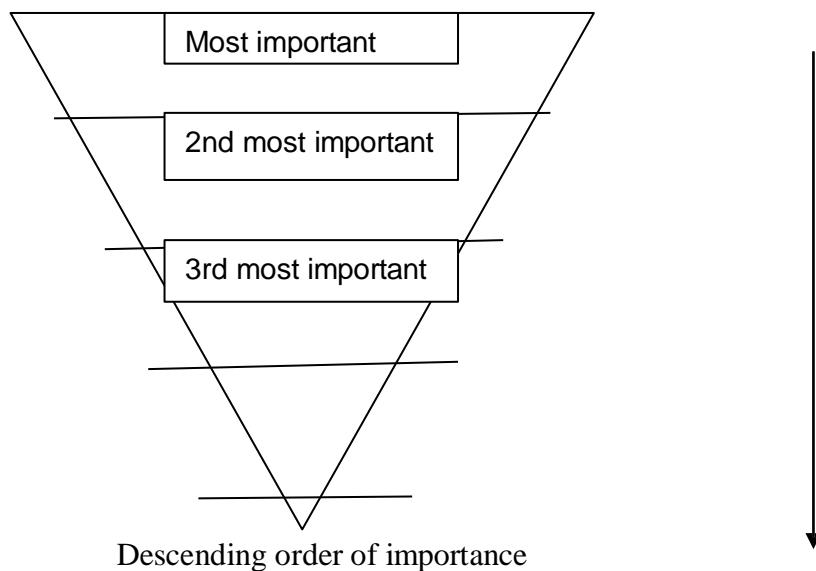
rangoli. Hence, the role, relevance, significance and importance of word in any writing specially news writing is crystal clear.

For a big stock of words, we should know a lot of synonyms and antonyms. Synonyms are just like a variety of flowers in a garland and antonyms are for transition, variation and modulation.

The extended form of synonyms is idioms and phrases. These are also required to give extreme transition and variation in the news writing or even news scripting. Sometimes even quotations and proverbs are also required specially in news writing or specially featurised news writing.

7.2.2 INVERTED PYRAMID RULE

This is such an important and pertinent rule of journalism that it is often followed.



(Fig.1: Drawn by author's scholar Arjoo Sharma)

According to this rule, the most important point in view of news worthiness is written in the first paragraph. Then the second most important after that third most important. That means the pyramid is built when news is written in descending order of importance. For example, consequence is more important than the cause. Hence consequence will be written in the first paragraph. It is not like a story or film where the suspense or the conclusion is kept on the hold. Let us take a story as an example. The



story sates: *"There was a king. He went on hunting along with his queen. He was passing through a dense forest. It was late evening. Gradually it became darkish. The lion suddenly came in the way and wanted to kill the couple. Then the king brought out his gun and shoted the lion immediately."* As a news this will be written quite differently. The heading maybe "King of the province kills the king of the forest" or "King shoots lion". The introduction or lead of the news story will also start like "The king shoted a lion while it was trying to attack the couple in a dense forest late this evening." Then the story will follow.

7.2.3 FIVE W'S AND ONE H

This is yet another important formula or technique of news writing. As we all know 5Ws and one H means as follows:

W: Who
W: What
W: When
W: Where
W: Why
H: How

This 5Ws and one H are important ingredients or elements or components of news. Even in a single column small news story the reporter must try to follow this formula. This brings some sort of completeness in the news story. In big story this thumb rule is followed with the help of several para breaks. Let us discuss one small example of news.

W (Who): Mr. Narendra Modi, the Prime Minister of India

W (What): Our Indian planning should be reverted and stated from below

W (Where): India International Centre, New Delhi

W (When): Today evening

W (Why): This is because planning from below is more democratic in nature.



H (How): Since the planning will incorporate the opinion of the last person, it will not only be democratic but decentralized too. Hence there will be a block level planning, a district level planning, a regional planning and at the end there will be a national planning. Thus, instead of imposing the planning from the top we will plan to start it from below. The above explanation is a simple explanation of the news writing technique 5Ws and one H.

The news may be briefly written as follows:

Planning from bottom is the need of the hour: Modi

New Delhi, 31 September: Mr. Narendra Modi the Prime Minister of India, said today at India International Centre that our Indian planning should be reverted and started from below. While inaugurating a seminar on "Indian planning: Problems and Prospects" organised by "The Economic Times", the Prime Minister said "This is because the planning from below is more democratic in nature."

Mr. Modi further said that since the planning would incorporate the opinion of the last person, it would not only be democratic but decentralized too. Hence there would be a block level planning a, district level planning, a regional planning and at the end there would be a national planning. Thus instead of imposing the planning from the top we would plan to start that from below, the Prime minister added.

Hence, in this case five Ws have come in the first paragraph. The element "Why" (means reason) is also there in the first paragraph as stated "This is because the planning from below is more democratic in nature.

Again the element "How" (reason with explanation) will carry forward in rest of the paragraphs following a suitable sequence as stated "Since the planning will incorporate the opinion of the last person, it will not only be democratic, but decentralized too. Hence, there will be a block- level planning, district-level planning, a regional planning and at the and there will be the national planning. Thus instead of imposing the planning from top we will plan to start it from below".



In the news writing while presenting it in the indirect narration (as written in the news) in the previous paragraph the word "Will" has been converted into "Would" and "It" converted into "That".

Thus, five Ws and one H are one of the important techniques of news writing. These days one more 'W', "Whom" is emerging fast which give importance to the audience. UGC chairperson while addressing Vice Chancellors said this and this, PM while addressing the CMs said this and this.

7.2.4. 7 Cs

For any general writing 7Cs of communication is one of the key 'mantras'. So is the case with the specific type of writing which is news writing. These Seven Cs are as follows:

1. C: Clarity
2. C: Conciseness
3. C: Continuity
4. C: Commonness
5. C: Correctness
6. C: Credibility
7. C: Completeness

- 1) **Clarity:** There should be a conceptual and linguistic clarity in news writing. If there are pictures or animations or graphs or any other visual illustrations then it should be crystal clear or else it may be perfectly dropped. Similarly in news presentation of radio, there should be audio clarity and in case of television news presentation, there should be audio, visual, textual, colour and other related clarity.
- 2) **Conciseness:** In news writing or scripting conceptual and linguistic conciseness are very important. Short word, short sentence, short paragraph and the whole news writing should be



short. There should be no beating about the bush. "Brevity is the soul of the wit", said William Shakespeare.

Instead of writing, " He got apprehension that he will be arrested."

A reporter may write, " He feared arrest."

But remember, " there should not be head-cut instead of hair-cut."

- 3) **Continuity:** This is yet another technique of news writing. The first sentence should be linked to the second sentence and the third sentence should be linked to the first and second sentence. Similarly, the first paragraph should be linked to the second and second to the third. Consequently, the whole text should be interlinked and interwoven. The news story should never be written in a fractured or broken form.

Remember: *Don't throw your readers to the dictionary otherwise your readers will throw you out of your job.*

- 4) **Commonness:** It is again very important that the knowledge level of the audience for whom you are writing the story is desirable. Read the pulse of your reader, their interest, attitude, aptitude, inclination, mindset, age, income, status and accordingly write your news story. Then you will see the miracle. That means when the level of audience and the level of news writer comes on the equal level, the news communication becomes highly effective.
- 5) **Correctness:** The news item should be free from mistakes. Even the correctness of the language is equally important. Even a comma can make a big difference in the sense of a communication. If there is factual error or numerical error or percentage error in a news, then its credibility is lost. So is the case with the report. When there are both conceptual error and linguistic error, then pictorial error or visual error is none-the-less significant.

Hence, projecting a news story in its correct form from all points of view is an indispensable technique for news writing.



- 6) **Credibility:** Credibility of a news is sometimes dependent on the existing credibility or status of a reporter. Credibility means a win of the trust factor from the target audience. The technique of raising the credibility of a news story is addition of relevant picture, cartoon, graph, diagram etc. It also depends on the factuality, accuracy, balance and objectivity of a news story. Again, examples, citations, data, interviews, symposiums etc. add to the credibility of a news story. Thus, credibility is an important and relevant news writing technique.
- 7) **Completeness:** This means the news should be balanced and covers all the probable aspects or affected parties of the event. Nothing is absolutely complete in this world. However, when there is a judicious mixture of factuality, accuracy, objectivity, fairness and above all balancing then the news story is treated to be complete in nature. Thus, completeness is a desirable tool in news writing.

7.2.5 GOLDEN RULES

There are several golden rules for news writing which are treated as unique techniques of news writing.

- (a) **Check, crosscheck, and multi-check.** (Explanation): News is a mass communicator with the help of a media technology. If a mistake or factual error is published intentionally or unintentionally, then it goes to masses which become irreparable. Hence, a reporter should check cross-check and multi-check a story till the expiry of the deadline.
- (b) **Do not throw your readers to the dictionary otherwise your readers will throw you out of your job.** (Explanation): This means don't use such words which are peculiar, strange, and unique to your audience. You have to arrest the readers into the text by using easily understandable words and contents.
- (c) **There should not be head-cut instead of hair-cut.** (Explanation): It relates to conciseness of a story. Conciseness doesn't mean rest of the Cs are lost. Again, conciseness doesn't mean killing the essence or gist of the story. A reporter should not skeletonize the story in such a manner that it's identity is lost.



(d) ***Don't be I-specialist.*** (Explanation): A reporter should never use the word 'I' in his story. To the utmost level, he may writes, when this reporter contacted the concerned ministry, etc. Again don't write 'I think', 'I mean', 'I know', etc. These are redundant and unnecessary sentences.

(e) ***If doubt, cut it out***

If doubt, find it out

If doubt, stick to the hand-out.

(Explanation: If something is doubtful, sceptical, apprehensive, wrong, or erroneous in your story SSbetter to cut it out. In other words, drop it out. Again, if something is doubtful and sceptical, but the newspaper cannot be published without that news story, then one has to find it out. And finally of something relates to the legal issues, then the reporter should stick to the hand-out. This is to say that stick to what is written in the legal document).

(f) ***Give uncompromising attention to the legal safety*** (Explanation: A reporter must pay special attention to any legal controversy. If your stories are filed in the court against defamation, copyright infringement, violation of contempt of court, then not only you will be penalized, even your organization will be penalized. In that case, your organization will ultimately fire you which leads to loss of name, fame, and glory also. Hence, a good reporter must pay rapt attention to the legal issues or expected legal controversies)

(g) ***There is nothing like a dull day for a news. There are only dull reporters and dull sub editors.***

(Explanation: If a reporter says there is no news today. That means he is a dull reporter. A good reporter keeps some exclusive stories for emergency as his intellectual saving. Similarly if there is no event, then a good reporter will use his contacts and may collect some news instantly by hint of his own personality, capacity, and contacts).

7.3 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Note: 1) Use the space below for your answers.



2) Compare your answers with those given at the end of this lesson.

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION.**1. The purpose of writing is to make the communication:**

- (a) Enlarging
- (b) Reducing
- (c) Insetting
- (d) Effective

2. What are 5 Ws & one H?

- (a) Whence, While, What, Who, Whom & How
- (b) Who, What, When, Where, Why & How
- (c) Who, Whence, What, When, Why & How
- (d) Who, Whom, What, When, Why & How

3. What is Inverted Pyramid Rule?

- (a) Writing in ascending order of importance
- (b) Writing in descending order of importance.
- (c) Writing continuously
- (d) Writing frequently

4. Completeness means:

- (a) Covering all aspects of affected parties
- (b) Covering one aspect of affected parties
- (c) Covering two aspects of affected parties
- (d) None of the above

5. If you throw your readers to the dictionary, what will your readers do ?



- (a) Throw you in the hall
- (b) Throw you in the market
- (c) Throw you out of your job
- (d) Throw you any where

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS:

1. Writing is an ---- &..... for effective communication.
2. Writing is cleaning a room with a broom.
3. Writing is a self-learning, self-developing andprocess.
4. News writing is a..... kind of art and craft.
5. Any writing is theof word power.

7.4 SUMMARY

Writing is an art and craft for effective communication. News writing is specific form of art and craft for appealing presentation of the events to the audience. It gets a professional touch after a prolonged effort. Writing is like cleaning a room with a broom. Each time you clean you get some dirt. After continuous effort, it becomes perfectly clean. Similarly writing demands continuous and effortless cleaning. If you enjoy this you are in the process of becoming a writer. Writing is a self-learning, self-developing and self-propelling process. Word power plays a vital role in writing. This is because words are like bricks in the house. Also words are like flowers in the garland. Therefore, a news writer must be aware of a lot of synonyms, antonyms, phrases, idioms, proverbs, quotations, etc. News writers should follow inverted pyramid style. They should also follow five Ws and one H principle. Other than that they should apply 7Cs principles of communication. These seven Cs are: Clarity, Conciseness, Continuity, Correctness, Commonness, Credibility and Completeness. These news writers should be aware of golden rules, murphy laws and pre-cautionary measures of writing.) These are like "*Check, Crosscheck, and multi-check.*"

Second, "*Do not throw your readers to the dictionary otherwise your readers will throw you out of your job.*" Third, "*There should not be head-cut instead of hair-cut.*"



Fourth, “*Don't be I-specialist.*” Fifth, “*If doubt, cut it out ;if doubt, find it out; if doubt, stick to the hand-out.* Sixth, “*Give uncompromising attention to the legal safety.*” And last but not the least important is that “*There is nothing like a dull day for a news. There are only dull reporters and dull sub editors.*”

7.5 KEYWORDS

Inverted Pyramid Style: It is reverse pyramid approach in which events are presented in the descending order of importance. That means consequence will come first and cause will go later. This is desirable not only from the production point of view, but also from the readers' point of view.

Pyramid Style: Here the events or ideas are depicted in the ascending order of importance. It starts with a general introduction and ends with a conclusion. Hence, its last paragraph becomes the most important unlike the inverted pyramid style.

Five Ws & One H: This is an integral part of structure of news report because five Ws and one H from the outlines for the news structure. As we all know five Ws and one H means as follows:

W: Who

W: What

W: When

W: Where

W: Why

H: How

This five Ws and one H are important ingredients or elements or components of news. Even in a single column small news story, the reporter must try to follow this formula. This brings some sort of completeness in the news story. In big story this thumb rule is followed with the help of several para breaks. Let us discuss one small example of news.

7Cs of Communication: For any general writing ,7Cs of communication is one of the key 'mantras'. So is the case with the specific type of writing which is news writing. These Seven Cs are as follows:

1. C: Clarity



-
- 2. C: Conciseness
 - 3. C: Continuity
 - 4. C: Commonness
 - 5. C: Correctness
 - 6. C: Credibility
 - 7. C: Completeness

Golden Rules: These are like “*Check, Crosscheck, and multi-check.*”

Second, “*Do not throw your readers to the dictionary otherwise your readers will throw you out of your job.*” Third, “*There should not be head-cut instead of hair-cut.*”

Fourth, “*Don't be I-specialist.*” Fifth, “*If doubt, cut it out; if doubt, find it out; if doubt, stick to the hand-out.*” Sixth, “*Give uncompromising attention to the legal safety.*” And last but not the least important is that “*There is nothing like a dull day for a news. There are only dull reporters.*”

7.6 SELF-ASSESSMENT TEST

- 1) What are various techniques of news writing.
- 2) Explain the new trends of news writing in this digital age.
- 3) Describe the inverted pyramid rule for news writing.
- 4) Discuss the 5Ws and One H approach for news writing.
- 5) Explain the 7Cs principles of communication vis-à-vis news writing.
- 6) Throw light on golden rules for news writing,
- 7) Describe the role of word power in news writing.

7.7 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION:

- 1. (d) Effective
- 2. (b) Who, What, When, Where, Why & How



3. (b) Writing in descending order of importance

4. (a) Covering all aspects of affected parties.

5. (c) Throw you out of your job.

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS:

1. Art Craft
2. Cleaning
3. Self-propelling
4. Specific
5. Outcome

7.8 REFERENCES/SUGGESTED READINGS

1. Kamath,M.V. (1990) - "Professional Journalism" published by Vikas Publishing House Private Limited, New Delhi
2. Shrivastav, K.M(1999)-"News Reporting and Editing" published by Sterling Publishing Private Limited, New Delhi.
3. Stovall,James Glen(2006)-"Writing for the Mass Media"6thedition,published by Pearson Education Inc. and Dorling Kindersley Publishing Inc.
4. Tewari,Arjun(1994)—“Jansancharaur Hindi Patrakarita” published by JaibhartiPrakashan,Allahabad.
5. "Media Problems and Prospects (1983)" published by National Media Centre.
6. Rayudu, C.S. (1993) - "Media and Communication Management" published by Himalaya Published House, New Delhi.
7. COMMUNICATOR (VOL. XXXXI, NO. 28, APRIL - JUNE 1996) published by the Indian Institute of Mass Communication, New Delhi.

(Related and Suggested Websites retrieved on 25th September,2022).



1. <https://www.masterclass.com/articles/how-to-write-like-a-journalist>
2. <https://www.masterclass.com/articles/how-to-write-like-a-journalist>
3. <https://www.google.com/search?q=what+is+news&rlz>
4. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Concept+of+news&rlz>
5. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Definitions+of+news&rlz>



SUBJECT: REPORTING	
COURSE CODE: MSM-523 A	AUTHOR: DR MANOJ DAYAL
LESSON NO.: 8	
TYPES OF REPORTING: I	

STRUCTURE

- 8.0 Learning Objectives
- 8.1 Introduction
- 8.2 Types of Reporting
 - 8.2.1 Political Reporting
 - 8.2.2 Economic Reporting
 - 8.2.3 Crime Reporting
 - 8.2.4 Science Reporting
- 8.3 Check Your Progress
- 8.4 Summary
- 8.5 Key Words
- 8.6 Self-Assessment Test
- 8.7 Answer to Check Your Progress
- 8.8 References/Suggested Readings

8.0 LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this lesson you will be able to:

- Understand types of reporting
- Know political reporting
- Describe economic reporting
- Discuss crime reporting



8.1 INTRODUCTION

Reporting is the presentation of news by a reporter/correspondent to the chief reporter/chief of the bureau who finally sends it to the desk. Reporters are the eyes and ears of a newspaper or any media organization, whereas sub editors are the central nervous system. Headline is to a sub editor what deadline is to a reporter.

That is to say that reporting is a challenging task. Maintaining contacts with the regular and hard sources and continuously getting news from the concerned beat is not a child's play. It is a herculean task. It is a hard nut to crack. It is an uphill task of collecting, digging and probing facts speedily within deadline with accuracy. In more detail, we can say that factuality, accuracy, balance, objectivity and fairness are the core of reporting. Discipline, courage, amicability, extrovertness, speed, accuracy, ethics are some of the important traits of a reporter and reporting is finally executing the news haunt with all such traits. Therefore, reporters are often described as "news hauntings". Thus reporting is an art and craft of collecting, digging, deriving, excavating, probing factual events from the concerned beat within the stipulated period of time.

8.2.1 POLITICAL REPORTING

This relates to the news item of ruling parties, their offices, their portfolios, their manifesto, parliament, Lok Sabha, Rajya Sabha, ministries, elections of Lok Sabha, Vidhan Sabha, Vidhan Parishad, municipal corporations, universities, colleges, trade unions and any other institutions.

Political news gets the highest coverage whether it is general newspapers, magazines, news agencies or any other media. Overexcessive coverage of political news and political journalism is the biggest loophole in our media.

Parliamentary reporting is an integral part of political reporting despite the fact that parliamentary reporting has got its own independent and separate identity. This is because it covers parliament, Lok Sabha, Rajya Sabha, all its sessions, debates, bill framing and passing, etc.

Now let us discuss the various components of political reporting one by one.



Political reporting covers the entire political activities of the ruling party. Right from the Prime Minister to the last member of parliament comes under the ruling party.

It largely and broadly covers the detailed activities of the ruling party, its president, his movements, his meetings, his gatherings, his speeches, his relationship. It covers all the press conferences of the president. A reporter covering the ruling party president is generally a senior reporter or sometimes he may be a special correspondent or chief of the bureau. The ruling party President also knows such reporters by their first name and they are in direct contact with the president. They keep the direct mobile number of the president including his secretaries and personal assistants. Similarly party general secretaries and other key post holders are sincerely and regularly covered. Occasionally, the president convenes press conferences, press meetings, press briefings and addresses the press frequently and regularly. Sometimes, it depends on the policy of the ruling party to maintain a border line with the press and it is also decided what distance or what proximity the party president will maintain with the press. The press also understands such situations and shapes accordingly. However senior correspondents and reporters covering the party president beat may visit his office or camp office as per the need of the press. For example, since the Prime Minister Sh. Narendra Modi maintains a high distance with the press and his office hardly convenes a press conference. However, Sh. Narendra Modi as a Member of Parliament is very friendly with the press in his parliamentary constituency, i.e., Varanasi. Similarly some political reporters of very senior standing with high experience also cover the Prime Minister. As we all know that the Prime Minister has broadly two roles. One as a public administrator. Other as a political leader. He may maintain a distance with the press as a public administrator. But he can't maintain a distance with the press as a political leader specially at the time of elections. Thus, he maintains a distance with the press as a public administrator. And a proximity with the press as a political leader depending upon the circumstances. However, the senior bureau chief or special correspondent covering PMO are in direct contact with the media advisors, principal secretaries, secretaries, joint secretaries, deputy secretary and personal assistants.

The rest of the union ministers and minister of states also have two roles. One as a public administrator and other as a political leader. But they generally follow the style and approach of their Prime Minister.



They are all very friendly with the press in their respective parliamentary constituencies as members of parliament.

Recently we all noticed when two union ministers Sh. Ravi Shankar Prasad union minister of communication, information technology and law and Sh. Prakash Javadekar, union minister of information and broadcasting and environment affairs, came very close to the press and regularly their pictures appeared on the front page of the newspapers. All of a sudden, these two senior ministers were removed from their ministries. It is believed that since they crossed the boundaries of the media sper their party guidelines, they had to reap the fruits of their own doings, which was covered by some of the senior political reporters.

Political reporting also covers opposition parties. Each political party is assigned at least two to three reporters in New Delhi and at least one reporter in different constituencies where their party exists. Here also the senior reporter or correspondent will be in regular touch with the party president, general secretaries, joint secretaries, media advisor, assistant media advisor and all such concerned persons.

Further, a political reporter studies the manifesto of all the prominent political parties and tries to find out the similarities in objectives and dissimilarities also. Accordingly, the reporter makes preparations for interrogating a particular political leader of a particular party. He analyses a political party in his news analysis on the basis of the success of attainment of the manifesto or the failure of attainment of the manifesto. That is to say that the manifesto of a political party is the most important tool for measuring the effectiveness of any political party.

As stated earlier also that parliamentary reporting is a part and parcel of political reporting. As a matter of fact, parliament and state legislatures turn out to be major news haunting spots, when their sessions are going on. The government is supposed to make all policy announcements in these houses. Political news also spreads from in and around these houses during their sessions as political parties express their views on various issues and the relative potentialities of different political parties are tested in these houses. There are a variety of moves and counter moves by the ruling as well as the opposition parties which gets coverage in the various news columns of different newspapers and media organisations. A reporter must be very well acquainted with the rules and procedures. As we all know that during inter-



session periods, there are conferences of presiding officers of all the houses which are presided over by the speaker of the Lok Sabha.

As it is evident that our Indian constitution provides a bicameral parliament consisting of the President and two houses, known as the council of states called "Rajya Sabha" and the House of the people called "Lok Sabha". A reporter while covering parliament must be aware of the fact that the Rajya Sabha is called the upper house. It consists of not more than 250 members. Out of these, twelve members are nominated by the President for their special knowledge or working experience in such matters as art, literature, science and social science. The rest of the seats are allocated to the various states and union territories, normally in proportion to their population, however, every state is represented by at least one member. The representatives of each state are elected by the elected members of the legislative assembly of the state in accordance with the system of proportional representation by means of a single transferable vote system. The lowest age for this type of membership of the house is 30 years.

The upper house, i.e., the Rajya Sabha was duly constituted for the first time on April 3, 1952. It is primarily a permanent body not subject to dissolution, but 1/3rd of the members retire every second year by rotation and are replaced by newly elected members. The Rajya Sabha at present has 245 members.

The Lok Sabha, on the other hand, is composed of representatives of people chosen by direct election on the basis of adult suffrage. The maximum strength of the house envisaged by the constitution is now 552- upto 543 members to represent the states, upto 20 members to represent the union territories and not more than two members of the Anglo-Indian community to be nominated by the President of in his opinion that community is not adequately represented in the house. The total elective membership is distributed among states in such a way that the ratio between the member of states allotted to each state and the population of the state is so far as practicable, the same for all states. The qualifying age for membership of the Lok Sabha as per our constitution is 25 years.

On the other hand, elections of all varieties whether Lok Sabha, Vidhan Sabha, Vidhan Parishad, municipal corporations, universities, colleges, trade unions, and any other institutions are very important issues of political reporting which are covered by experienced reporters with skills and expertise.



8.2.2 ECONOMIC REPORTING

This relates to bread and butter. This broadly relates to the primary sector, secondary sector and tertiary sector of our economy. Primary sector includes agriculture and forestry. Secondary sector includes industries and tertiary sector relates to infrastructure, power, water, road, services, information and technology, etc.

Other than that, the economic reporting includes, poverty, unemployment, population, inflation, regional disparity, tax, union budget, export, import, foreign trade, debt trap, shares, debentures, etc.

Hence it requires skilled reporting as economic reporting is a kind of technical reporting. Such reporters should have a sound background of economics/ commerce and mass communication with sufficient practical experience. Covering even of the above said issues of reporting needs specialization on the part of the reporter/correspondent.

8.2.3 CRIME REPORTING

It covers a variety of crimes of political, religious, spiritual and media related issues. Political crime includes riggings in elections, political murders, kidnappings, torturings, casting operations, defamations, character assassinations, scams, etc. Social crime pertains to crime against women like dowry, dowry deaths, bride burnings, women exploitations, rapes and murders, molestations, kidnappings, stalkings of cyber nature, black mailings, etc.

Children related crimes also come under the purview of social crime like child abuse, social exploitation of children, child pornography, etc. Youth related crimes are also considered as social crime which includes murder, suicide, drug addiction, sabotaging of public property, group, class, gang war, etc. Again crime against old retired senior citizens are social crimes in which younger generation tortures them and get their property written in their hand and finally expel them from their own houses.

Further, we have economic crime which includes tax evasion, smuggling, money laundering, etc. Then bad dressing with nudity and semi-nudity leads to cultural crime. Educational crime includes unfair means in the examination, adoption of political means in admission, paper licking, impersonations, etc.



Similarly, we have several religious and spiritual crimes in which Saints or Sadhus exploit women worshippers due to their superstition and blind sentimental trust. Then media related crimes are paid news, blackmailings, killings of media persons by politicians and mafia. The above said crimes broadly covers almost all variety of crimes which can be covered by a practically experienced and thematically exposed reporter or correspondent.

8.2.4 SCIENCE REPORTING

It relates to the scientific events, break-throughs, inquiries, investigations, achievements, great scientists, etc. It is considered to be a highly technical reporting. Those who are good in journalism are very poor in science and those who are knowledgeable in science are very poor in journalism and mass communication. Hence, both journalism and science run parallel to each other. Here also the reporter are supposed to be acquainted with at least basics of science and fundamentals of journalism with reasonable practical experience. Overall science reporting includes almost every item around us like mobile, computer, tablet, cooler etc. Often than that it includes all variety of scientific achievements, inventions, discoveries. It also includes the great histories and stories of scientists. Hence, science reporting is a skillful job.

8.3 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Note: 1) Use the space below for your answers.

2) Compare your answers with those given at the end of this lesson.

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION.

1. Political reporting gets coverage in the newspaper:

- (e) Minimum
- (f) Normal
- (g) Sporadic
- (h) Maximum

2. A reporter is answerable to :

- (e) News Editor



- (f) Chief Reporter
- (g) Chief Sub Editor
- (h) None of the above

3. Science and mass communication runs:

- (e) Horizontal
- (f) Vertical
- (g) Parallel
- (h) Circular

4. Political reporting includes:

- (e) Social reporting
- (f) Economic reporting
- (g) Parliamentary reporting
- (h) Cultural reporting

5. Economic reporting includes:

- (e) Social reporting
- (f) Political reporting
- (g) Business reporting
- (h) Educational reporting

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS:

1. Parliamentary reporting is a...part of political reporting.
2. Parliament and State legislatures turn out to benews haunting spots, when their sessions are going on.
3. The Economic Times is an economicof India.
4. Science reporting includes...reporting.
5. Crime reporting often requires...reporting.

8.4 SUMMARY



Reporters are the eyes and ears of a newspaper whereas sub editors are the central nervous system. Headline is to a sub editor what deadline is to a reporter. This is to say that reporting is a risk-taking and challenging task. Maintaining contacts with the regular and hard sources and continuously getting news from the concerned beat is not a child's play. It is a herculean task. It is a hard nut to crack. It is an uphill task of collecting, digging, and probing facts speedily within deadline with accuracy. In more detail, we can say that factuality, accuracy, balance, objectivity and fairness are the core of reporting. Discipline, courage, amicability, extrovertness, speed, accuracy, ethics are some of the important traits of a reporter and reporting is finally executing the news haunt with all such traits. Therefore, reporters are often described as "news hauntings". Thus reporting is an art and craft of collecting, digging, deriving, excavating, probing factual events from the concerned beat within the stipulated period of time.

Political reporting pertains to the news item of politics, political activities of ruling parties, their offices, their portfolios, their manifesto, parliament, Lok Sabha, Rajya Sabha, ministries, elections of Lok Sabha, Vidhan Sabha, Vidhan Parishad, Municipal Corporation, universities, college, trade unions and any other institutions. Political news gets the highest coverage whether it is general newspapers, magazines, news agencies or any other media. Over Excessive coverage of political news and political journalism is the biggest loophole in our media. Parliamentary reporting is an integral part of political reporting despite the fact that parliamentary reporting has got its own independent and separate identity. This is because it covers parliament, Lok Sabha, Rajya Sabha, all its sessions, debates, bill framing and passing, etc. Economic reporting, on the other hand, broadly relates to the primary sector, secondary sector and tertiary sector of our economy. Primary sector includes agriculture and forestry. Secondary sector includes industries and tertiary sector relates to infrastructure, power, water, road, services, information and technology, etc.

Other than that, the economic reporting includes, poverty, unemployment, population, inflation, regional disparity, tax, union budget, export, import, foreign trade, debt trap, shares, debentures, etc. Moreover, crime reporting covers a variety of crimes of political, religious, spiritual and media related. Political crime include rigging in elections, political murder, kidnapping, torturing, casting operation, defamation, character assassination, scams, etc. Social crime pertains to crime against women like



dowry, dowry deaths, bride burning, women exploitation, rape, rape and murder, molestation, kidnapping, stalking of cyber nature, black mailing, etc.

Children related crimes also come under the purview of social crime like child abuse, social exploitation of children, child pornography, etc. Youth related crimes are also considered as social crime which includes murder, suicide, drug addiction, sabotaging of public property, group, class, gang war, etc. Again crime against old retired senior citizens are social crimes in which younger generation tortures them and get their property written in their hand and finally expel them from their own houses. Further, we have economic crime which includes tax evasion, smuggling, money laundering, etc. Then bad dressing with nudity and semi-nudity leads to cultural crime. Educational crime includes unfair means in the examination, adoption of political means in admission, paper licking, impersonations, etc. Similarly, we have several religious and spiritual crimes in which Saints or Sadhus exploit women worshippers due to their superstition and blind sentimental trust. Then media related crimes are paid news, blackmailing, killing of media persons by politicians and mafia. The above said crimes broadly covers almost all variety of crimes which can be covered by a practically experienced and thematically exposed reporter or correspondent. On the other hand, science reporting relates to the scientific events, achievements, scientists, etc. It is considered to be a highly technical reporting. Those who are good in journalism are very poor in science and those who are knowledgeable in science are very poor in journalism and mass communication. Hence, both journalism and science run parallel to each other. Here also the reporter are supposed to be acquainted with at least basics of science and fundamentals of journalism with reasonable practical experience.

8.5 KEYWORDS

Reporting: It is a process of news gathering and then writing. It is a method of presentation of news by reportorial staff to the Chief Reporter/Chief of the Bureau who finally sends it to the desk.

Political reporting: It relates to the news item of politics, political activities of ruling parties, their offices, their portfolios, their manifesto, parliament, Lok Sabha, Rajya Sabha, ministries, elections of Lok Sabha, Vidhan Sabha, Vidhan Parishad, Municipal Corporation, universities, college, trade unions and any other institutions.



Parliamentary reporting: It is an integral part of political reporting despite the fact that parliamentary reporting has got its own independent and separate identity. This is because it covers parliament, Lok Sabha, Rajya Sabha, all its sessions, debates, bill framing and passing, etc.

Economic reporting: It broadly relates to the primary sector, secondary sector and tertiary sector of our economy. Primary sector includes agriculture and forestry. Secondary sector includes industries and tertiary sector relates to infrastructure, power, water, road, services, information and technology, etc. Other than that, economic reporting includes, poverty, unemployment, population, inflation, regional disparity, tax, union budget, export, import, foreign trade, debt trap, shares, debentures, etc.

Crime reporting: It covers a variety of crimes of political, religious, spiritual and media related. Political crime include rigging in elections, political murder, kidnapping, torturing, casting operation, defamation, character assassination, scams, etc.

Science reporting: It relates to the scientific events, inquiries, investigations, achievements, scientists, etc. It is considered to be a highly technical reporting.

8.6 SELF-ASSESSMENT TEST

1. What is reporting? Do you think the types of reporting are unlimited ? Explain.
2. What are various techniques of political news gathering?
3. Explain the new trends of news reporting in this digital age.
4. What is political reporting? Which areas are covered under political reporting? Elaborate.
5. What is economic reporting? What are the major problems of economic reporting ? Describe.
6. What is crime reporting? Can you explain how crime reporting is linked to political and economic issues? Explain.
7. What is science reporting? Explain how science and mass communication runs parallel to each other.

8.7 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION



-
1. (d) Maximum
 2. (b) Chief Reporter
 3. (c) Parallel
 4. (a) Parliamentary reporting
 5. (c) Business reporting

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS

1. Integral
2. Major
3. Daily
4. Technical
5. Investigative

8.8 REFERENCES/SUGGESTED READINGS

1. Kamath,M.V. (1990) - "Professional Journalism" published by Vikas Publishing House Private Limited, New Delhi.
2. Shrivastav, K.M(1999)-"News Reporting and Editing" published by Sterling Publishing Private Limited, New Delhi.
3. Stovall,James Glen(2006)-"Writing for the Mass Media"6thedition,published by Pearson Education Inc. and Dorling Kindersley Publishing Inc.
4. Tewari,Arjun(1994)—“Jansancharaur Hindi Patrakarita” published by JaibhartiPrakashan,Allahabad.
5. "Media Problems and Prospects (1983)" published by National Media Centre.
6. Rayudu, C.S. (1993) - "Media and Communication Management" published by Himalaya Published House, New Delhi.
7. COMMUNICATOR (VOL. XXXXI, NO. 28, APRIL - JUNE 1996) published by the Indian Institute of Mass Communication, New Delhi.

(Related and Suggested Websites retrieved on 25th September,2022).



1. <https://www.studocu.com/in/document/aligarh-muslim-university/mass-communication/types-of-reporting-lecture-notes-9/22272678>
2. <https://www.gcu.edu/blog/engineering-technology/what-science-journalism>
3. <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S1877050916305646#:~:text=Till%20now%20C%20crime%20reporting%20system,case%20of%20emergency%20on%20time.>
4. <https://beatbasics.pressbooks.com/chapter/how-to-cover-economics-an-introduction/#:~:text=Economics%20reporting%20covers%20the%20impact,job%20covering%20the%20economics%20beat>
5. https://www.academia.edu/35716177/political_Reporting_ppt
6. <https://www.google.com/search?q=what+is+news&rlz>.
7. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Concept+of+news&rlz>.
8. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Definitions+of+news&rlz>.



SUBJECT: REPORTING	
COURSE CODE: MSM-523 A	AUTHOR: DR MANOJ DAYAL
LESSON NO.: 9	
TYPES OF REPORTING: II	

STRUCTURE

9.0 Learning Objectives

9.1 Introduction

9.2 Types of Reporting

 9.2.1 Sports Reporting

 9.2.2 Cultural Reporting

 9.2.3 Legislature Reporting

 9.2.4 Disaster Reporting

 9.2.5 Accident Reporting

9.3 Check Your Progress

9.4 Summary

9.5 Key Words

9.6 Self-Assessment Test

9.7 Answer to Check Your Progress

9.8 References/Suggested Readings

9.0 LEARNING OBJECTIVES

The lesson structure shall be as follows:

- Understand types of Reporting
- Know sports reporting
- Describe cultural reporting
- Discuss legislature reporting



- Throw light on accident reporting

9.1 INTRODUCTION

By now, we are a little bit exposed to the concept of a variety of reporting like reporting on politics, parliament, economy, crime, science, sports, culture, legislature, disaster and accident. We have very well understood that each type of reporting demands specific skills, expertise, temperament, attitude, interest and inclination. Similarly in this lesson, we will take up some more skill-oriented and advanced kind of reporting which play a vital role in the entire practice of this emerging trend of journalism and mass communication.

9.2 TYPES OF REPORTING

As discussed in the previous lesson, that reporting is not a child's play. It is a herculean task. It is hard nut to crack. It demands high degree of amicability and extrovertness. It is basically a continuous ongoing process of collecting, digging, deriving, excavating, probing facts from the concerned beats on the strength of personal contacts and reaches of a reporter. And here deadline is to a reporter what headline is to a sub-editor. Reporters are the eyes and ears of media and has to follow and re-follow an uphill task and finally submit the story before it is dead, i.e., "To submit the story before the deadline, else the story is dead". Again in the previous lesson, we have comprehensively discussed political reporting, economic reporting, crime reporting and science reporting. In this lesson, we will systematically discuss sports reporting, cultural reporting, legislature reporting, disaster reporting and accident reporting one by one.

9.2.1 SPORTS REPORTING

This reporting is one of the most demanding segments of journalism. It relates to the news gathering and writing relating to games and sports. It may be an indoor game like chess, table tennis, carom, badminton, etc. And it may be an outdoor game like hockey, football, cricket, volleyball, etc. Earlier sports was getting only half page coverage. But presently it is getting almost two page space in many of the English dailies. This is one of the most popular types of news specially among youth. A study



reveals that the percentage of boys as compared to girls reading/listening/viewing/using sports news is even more. Sports news and activities get a respectable and remarkable coverage these days, specially due to its popularity, prevalence and prominence. Whatever may be the category of media, sports news is omnipotent and omnipresent. As far as newspapers are concerned, the coverage of sport moved from half-page to one full page and its challenging trend is that today there are several newspapers (specially English as stated earlier also) which are giving at least two page space to sports news. We have an independent sports daily published from USA called 'The National'. But we in India don't have a trend of sports dailies unlike economic dailies. However, we have countless number of sports magazines Like '*Sports World*', '*Sports Today*', '*Sports Week*', '*Sports Star*', '*Sport And Pastime*', '*Wisden Asia Cricket*', '*Bharatiya Kusti Patrika*', '*Cricket Today*', '*A Guide To Tennis Lover*', '*Golf Digest India*', '*Sports Business*', '*ESPN The Magazine La Polo International*', '*Slam: A Great Basketball*', '*Runner World*', '*World Soccer*', '*Khel Jagat*', '*Cricket Samrat*', '*Sports Zone*' And '*Khel Today*'. Digital media are not lagging behind as far as sports news is concerned. Sports news covers both indoor and outdoor games including sports controversies, debates, corruption, etc. Indoor games like Table Tennis, Badminton, Wrestling, Carom, Chess, etc. are very famous. Whereas outdoor games like cricket, football, hockey, Kabaddi, Kho-Kho, etc. are the regular trends and features. Overexcessive coverage to the game cricket despite not being our national game, has always remained a debatable issue as far as media analysis vis-à-vis sports news is concerned.

This type of reporting does not follow the established 'Inverted Pyramid Rule'. This is because victory becomes the main lead. Scores are the second most important part. But it goes at the end. The narration of say for example 'India winning the toss, started to bat first'. Then it's commentary in the sequence of batting order becomes the middle of the story. Here is a kind of break of 'inverted pyramid style'. The language and the style of writing a sports news is also quite different from general writing of a news report.

Thus, sports reporting is different in structure, style and presentation. And a sports reporter must be acquainted with these aspects. He must be aware of different structure, style and presentation of sports news. Moreover, he should have been keen interest in games and sports. He cannot be in university or



college level player in all the games and sports. But he must have devotions in understanding the basics of the games and sports which he is covering.

9.2.2 CULTURAL REPORTING

This type of reporting includes cultural functions of schools, colleges, universities, and other academic institutions or cultural events taking place in any government, semi-government, and non-government organisations. Sometimes villagers for their own entertainment perform some recreational activities, which comes under the jurisdiction of cultural reporting. It covers festivals, Independence Day, Republic Day, obituaries and anniversaries of great men, etc. Generally the obituaries and anniversaries of great towering personalities are celebrated at many places which are followed by cultural events.

A reporter while covering cultural events of any kind must have keen interest in such events. But he should not get lost in cultural events in the process of entertainment and recreation. He should not dance on the stage as sometimes the audience also joins the stage dancing in extreme circumstances. As a serious journalist towards his duties and responsibilities, he must note down all the activities, specialities of different activities. He must be keen in collecting a few most newsy, entertaining and attractive pictures of the event. At the eve, he must meet the cultural secretary, check, cross-check and multi-check correct names of the participants, chief guest, important persons on the dias. He should be pre-acquainted with such programmes and must join such programmes as a reporter with homework.

During the event, he should be alert and keep an eye on anything special which comes in between. Again the language and style of a cultural reporting becomes a little bit different. He must be acquainted with specific words often used during the cultural programmes, events, gatherings, etc. He may break the traditional 'inverted pyramid style' if he thinks it should be written or presented in a creative style. He may use his freedom of expression, style, language and structure. Say for example, if the cultural reporter thinks that the event should be written in the form of featurised news. He may combine a few elements of feature writing like entertainment, recreation, jokes, liveliness, etc. or if he thinks that writing a news feature is more suitable than featurised news, he may do so. Again, he may mix his views at the end, if it gives some extra life to the story. A news analysis or interpretative reporting or a backgrounder is generally avoided in cultural reporting.



Cultural reporting is generally assigned to cub reporters who are inexperienced, new to the field or trainee reporter. In that case, he must consult his senior in the office before using any sort of extra liberty. It is not his discretion to make it a featurised news or news feature. But he can question his immediate chief (whom he is answerable), should we make it a news feature? Should we make it a featurised news story to make it more lively and entertaining? Or should we mix our views also? If yes, then in what way? In the beginning as a cap intro? Or at the end without influencing the objectivity of the news story, specially when your senior prevents or the policy of the newspaper does not allow which your senior is already well acquainted with.

Thus, a cultural reporter, specially when he is cub, inexperienced, new, trainee, he must study the event, come with the homework, note down all the relevant points, check, cross-check with the organization about the facts and figures and must consult his senior before taking any liberty of use of extra creativity or innovation. But in journalism, the deadline of a story is the most vital in which sometimes he is not in a position to consult his senior. Then he should play a safe game and follow the basic standard principles of reporting already prescribed. Despite being neophyte, he must try to smell the policy and style sheet of his newspaper. For that the easiest method is to go back, and read the old newspapers seriously, say at least of a month or so. Despite the fact that cultural reporting is not so risky like political reporting, yet on very rare occasion it makes a controversy. For example, in one of the recent event when Lord Krishna spoke some modern dialogue about romance, it made a big controversy by the readers. It was reported by a cub reporter.

Hence, in some of the sensitive issues like God, religion, susceptibility, superstition, orthodoxy, conservativeness of the audience, etc. The cultural reporter must keep an eye on and do the required extra effort following the golden rules and murphy laws of reporting.

9.2.3 LEGISLATURE REPORTING

It is a very important issue and generally incorporates some controversies. This type of reporting relates to legislative activities and is mostly covered by senior reporters/ correspondent, special correspondent, chief of the bureau, etc. A reporter must know the rules, regulations and procedures of legislature assembly, since members of the legislative assembly are the law maker of the state.



The rules, regulations and procedures of legislative assembly are almost similar to that of parliament. During inter-session periods, there are conferences of presiding officers of all the houses which are presided over by the speaker of the assembly. This makes rules, regulations and procedures of the assembly more or less uniform. This type of reporting is, therefore, considered to be an important and significant feature of parliamentary democracy. Here, the Vidhan Sabha and the Vidhan Parishad are called legislature. Legislative literally means that which legislates or frames laws. It seriously involves reporting the routined proceedings of these bodies. This task of reporting generally incorporates a variety of activities of a legislature. This also includes the complexities of a legislature and debates on subject of public importance. For example, if a state government wants to bring, a new press bill, the government will take it to the legislature for comprehensive debates and discussion. The state government may initiate a public debate first and then may bring it to the assembly step by step. That is to say that legislative reporters despite being senior and experienced persons must have some knowledge of quick noting or shorthand. It often involves jotting down extremely copious notes of speeches made by ministers and members in both the house of legislature. The exact words or quotes from the mouth of the chief minister or ministers or members must be noted for credibility specially in crucial sensitive issues. Here, the knowledge of noting down or short hand is considered to be very important because the reporter is not allowed to record the proceedings electronically either with his mobile or with extra tape recorder. Here, it is important to mention that the Indian constitution provides a bicameral legislative assembly and the council, i.e., the Vidhan Sabha and the Vidhan Parishad. As per the law, the assembly in the state is equivalent to that of the Lok Sabha and the council is equivalent to that of the Rajya Sabha. In India, there are a few states which have the Vidhan Sabha, but not the Vidhan Parishad. Conclusively, other than the basics of skilled and advanced reporting, a reporter must be fully acquainted with the right privileges, immunities and amenities bestowed on the honourable members of both the houses. Without this a legislative reporter can't work smoothly and confidently, however senior or experienced he may be.

9.2.4 DISASTER REPORTING



This type of reporting is executed by professionally expert reporters who minutely and meticulously examine community disaster mitigation and preparedness, providing disaster warnings, whenever possible, writing new stories on disasters, and facilitating community disaster recovery and resilience.

Here, examining community disaster mitigation and preparedness includes the watchdog function and planning approach of disaster reporter. Again they (reporter) facilitate community disaster recovery and resilience by dint of fostering community dialogue called 'form', building connections and help develop community narratives. As we all know that there may be nature-made disaster as well as man-made disaster. Both these types of disaster pose a significant risk to the human health and well-being of the people. Disaster reporting has to constantly and continuously communicate all such aspects as communication is an essential aspect of disaster mitigation, preparedness, response and recovery.

Thus, disaster reporters have a vital role to play in protecting the lives of the people and reducing the severe damages and intolerable harms.

9.2.5 ACCIDENT REPORTING

This is again treated as skilled and advanced reporting. This type of reporting prescribes methods and practices for reporting, inquiring, digging, probing, and investigating accidents that can be read and understood by all stakeholders including managers, supervisors and employees.

As we all know that sometimes accidents become unavoidable due to human or system error. Even animals and birds also cause accidents. In road accidents, cows, buffalos, oxes, dogs, and donkeys all play vital role. In the night, these animals disturb the highway driving in the dark. These animals start running on the highway and their turns are uncertain. They are also in sleepy and semi-sleepy moods, specially in the night and their behaviours are uncertain. Some drivers are also drunk, and sleepy in the night leading to severe accidents.

Further, this type of reporting identifies any unsafe conditions, acts or procedures which may have caused injuries and harms to the worker and prevent others from being injured in the same manner.



Thus, accident reporting is a continuous process of organized and systematic facts collections and analysis relating to an accident which led to the loss and damage of the property, time or health of the sufferers and sometimes even loss of our precious lives. Since it is a systematic, scientific, evaluative and academic analysis of the facts, hence it should be handled with extreme care. That is to say that reporting expertise of senior and experienced journalists is required here to mitigate the heavy public loss.

9.3 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Note: 1) Use the space below for your answers.

2) Compare your answers with those given at the end of this lesson.

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION.

1. Reporters are treated as :

- (i) Eyes of the organization
- (j) Ears of the organization
- (k) Eyes and ears of the organization
- (l) None of the above

2. A reporter is answerable to :

- (i) News Editor
- (j) Chief Reporter
- (k) Chief Sub Editor
- (l) None of the above

3. Sports news does not follow the structure of :

- (i) Horizontal
- (j) Vertical
- (k) Inverted pyramid
- (l) Pyramid

4. Which game gets the highest coverage in newspaper in sports news :

- (i) Football



- (j) Hockey
- (k) Cricket
- (l) Badminton

5. Cultural reporting is generally assigned to :

- (i) Experienced reporters
- (j) Cub reporters
- (k) Senior reporters
- (l) Political reporters

6. Legislature reporting is generally assigned to :

- (a) Experienced reporters
- (b) Cub reporters
- (c) Sports reporters
- (d) Science reporters

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS:

1. Headline is to a sub editor whatis to a reporter.
2. Reporters are&of a newspaper.
3. " Khel Jagat " is a sports magazine published in..... language.
4. A reporter should have..... for news and feel for society.
5. Reporters must bein nature.

9.4 SUMMARY

Reporting is not a child's play. It is a herculean task. It is hard nut to crack. It demands high degree of amicability and extrovertness. It is basically a continuous on going process of collecting, digging, deriving, excavating, probing facts from the concerned beats on the strength of personal contacts and reaches of a reporter. Reporters are the eyes and ears of a newspaper whereas sub editors are the central nervous system. Headline is to a sub editor what deadline is to a reporter. This is to say that reporting is a risk-taking and challenging task.



Sports reporting is one of the most popular type of news specially among youth. A study reveals that the percentage of boys as compared to girls reading/listening/viewing/using sports news is even more. Sports news and activities get a respectable and remarkable coverage these days, specially due to its popularity, prevalence and prominence. Whatever may be the category of media, sports news is omnipotent and omnipresent. As far as newspapers are concerned the coverage of sports moved from half-page to one full page and it is a challenging trend is that today there are several newspapers (specially English as stated earlier also) which are giving at least two page space to sports news. Moreover, cultural reporting covers festivals, Independence day, Republic day, obituaries and anniversaries of great men, etc. Generally the obituaries and anniversaries of great towering personalities are celebrated at many places which are followed by cultural events. A reporter while covering cultural events of any kind must have keen interest in such events. But he should not get lost in cultural events in the process of entertainment and recreation. He should not dance on the stage as sometimes the audience also joins the stage dancing in extreme circumstances. Further, legislature reporting is mostly covered by senior reporters/ correspondent, special correspondent, chief of the bureau, etc. A reporter must know the rules, regulations and procedures of legislative assembly. Since members of the legislative assembly are the law maker of the state. The rules, regulations and procedures of legislative assembly are almost similar to that of parliament. During inter-session periods, there are conferences of presiding officers of all the houses which are presided over by the speaker of the assembly. This makes rules, regulations and procedures of the assembly more or less uniform. This type of reporting is, therefore, considered to be an important and significant feature of parliamentary democracy .In addition, disaster reporting is executed by professionally expert reporters who minutely and meticulously examine community disaster mitigation and preparedness, providing disaster warnings, whenever possible, writing new stories on disasters, and facilitating community disaster recovery and resilience. Here, examining community disaster mitigation and preparedness includes the watchdog function and planning approach of disaster reporter. Again they (reporter) facilitate community disaster recovery and resilience by dint of fostering community dialogue called 'form', building connections and help develop community narratives. Besides, accident reporting is a continuous process of organized and systematic facts collections and analysis relating to an accident which led to the loss and damage of the property, time or health of the sufferers and sometimes even



loss of our previous lives. Since it is a systematic, scientific, evaluative and academic analysis of the facts, hence it should be handled with extreme care. That is to say that reporting expertise of senior and experienced journalists is required here to mitigate the heavy public loss. Hence, such reportings should be handled with care.

9.5 KEYWORDS

Reporting: It is a process of news gathering and then writing. It is a method of presentation of news by reportorial staff to the Chief Reporter/Chief of the Bureau who finally sends it to the desk

Sports reporting: It relates to the news gathering and writing relating to games and sports. It may be an indoor game like chess, table tennis, carom, badminton, etc. And it may be an outdoor game like hockey, football, cricket, volleyball, etc.

Cultural reporting: It includes cultural functions of schools, colleges, universities, and other academic institutions. Or cultural events taking place in any government, semi-government, and non-government organisations. Sometimes villagers for their own entertainment perform some recreational activities, which comes under the jurisdiction of cultural reporting. It covers festivals, Independence day, Republic day, obituaries and anniversaries of great men, etc. Generally the obituaries and anniversaries of great towering personalities are celebrated at many places which are followed by cultural events.

Legislature reporting: It relates to legislative activities and is mostly covered by senior reporters/ correspondent, special correspondent, chief of the bureau, etc. A reporter must know the rules, regulations and procedures of legislative assembly, since members of the legislative assembly are the law maker of the state.

Disaster reporting: It is executed by professionally expert reporters who minutely and meticulously examine community disaster mitigation and preparedness, providing disaster warnings, whenever possible, writing new stories on disasters, and facilitating community disaster recovery and resilience.



Accident reporting: It is a continuous process of organized and systematic facts collections and analysis relating to an accident which led to the loss and damage of the property, time or health of the sufferers and sometimes even loss of our previous lives.

9.6 SELF-ASSESSMENT TEST

1. What is sports reporting? Discuss the new trends of sports reporting.
2. Describe the various types of sports news with suitable examples.
3. Enumerate the various sports magazines.
4. What is cultural reporting? Describe the emerging trends of cultural reporting.
5. Describe what kinds of cultural activities are performed in the Indian villages and how would you report such activities?
6. What is legislature reporting? How is it different from parliamentary reporting? Explain.
7. Describe the new trends of legislature reporting in this digital age.
8. What is disaster reporting? Describe the pre-cautionary measures for disaster reporting.
9. What is accident reporting? Throw light on the present status of this type of reporting.
10. Describe the emerging trend of accident reporting with suitable examples.

9.7 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION:

1. (c) Eyes and ears of the organisation
2. (b) Chief Reporter
3. (c) Inverted Pyramid
4. (c) Cricket
5. (b) Cub reporters
6. (a) Experienced reporters

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS



1. Deadline
2. Eyes & ears
3. Hindi
4. Nose
5. Extrovert

9.8 REFERENCES/SUGGESTED READINGS

1. Kamath,M.V. (1990) - "Professional Journalism" published by Vikas Publishing House Private Limited, New Delhi.
2. Shrivastav, K.M(1999)-"News Reporting and Editing" published by Sterling Publishing Private Limited, New Delhi.
3. Stovall,James Glen(2006)-"Writing for the Mass Media"6th edition,published by Pearson Education Inc. and Dorling Kindersley Publishing Inc.
4. Tewari,Arjun(1994)—“Jansancharaur Hindi Patrakarita” published by JaibhartiPrakashan,Allahabad.
5. "Media Problems and Prospects (1983)" published by National Media Centre.
6. Rayudu, C.S. (1993) - "Media and Communication Management" published by Himalaya Published House, New Delhi.
7. COMMUNICATOR (VOL. XXXXI, NO. 28, APRIL - JUNE 1996) published by the Indian Institute of Mass Communication, New Delhi.

(Related and Suggested Websites retrieved on 25th September,2022).

1. <https://www.studocu.com/in/document/aligarh-muslim-university/mass-communication/types-of-reporting-lecture-notes-9/22272678>
2. <https://students.umw.edu/safety/safety-plan/chapter-accident-reporting/>
3. https://www.researchgate.net/figure/The-disaster-journalism-cycle_fig1_332451709
4. <https://egyankosh.ac.in/bitstream/123456789/7514/1/Unit-2.pdf>



-
5. <https://www.culturepartnership.eu/en/publishing/cultural-journalism-course/lecture-13-1#:~:text=The%20primary%20concern%20of%20cultural,%2C%20photography%2C%20architecture%20and%20design>.
 6. <https://www.tckpublishing.com/sports-writing/>
 7. <https://www.google.com/search?q=what+is+news&rlz>.
 8. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Concept+of+news&rlz>.
 9. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Definitions+of+news&rlz>.



SUBJECT: REPORTING	
COURSE CODE: MSM-523 A	AUTHOR: DR MANOJ DAYAL
LESSON NO.: 10	
TYPES OF REPORTING: III	

STRUCTURE

- 10.0 Learning Objectives
- 10.1 Introduction
- 10.2 Types of Reporting
 - 10.2.1 Travelogue
 - 10.2.2 Obituary
 - 10.2.3 Conference
 - 10.2.4 Seminar
- 10.3 Check Your Progress
- 10.4 Summary
- 10.5 Key Words
- 10.6 Self-Assessment Test
- 10.7 Answer to Check Your Progress
- 10.8 References/Suggested Readings

10.0 LEARNING OBJECTIVES

The lesson structure shall be as follows:

- Understand types of reporting
- Know travelogue
- Describe obituary
- Discuss conference



- Throw light on seminar

10.1 INTRODUCTION

We are now even more exposed to a few more specific varieties of reporting like sport, game, art, culture, literature, legislature, disaster and accident. We have systematically learnt the unique specialties and traits of each of them as to how the differently focused skills, expertise and temperament are required for such reporting. In the same manner, in this lesson we will take some more specific, advanced and rare types of reporting which are extremely relevant, useful and important in our entire journalistic career. Specific methods and principles of differently centered reporting are nonetheless significant.

10.2 TYPES OF REPORTING

As discussed in the previous lessons about how to report politics, parliament, economy, business, finance, crime, science, sport, art, culture, legislature, literature, disaster, and accident, we have understood a variety of challenges being forced by the reporters and correspondents while reporting variedly centered reportings. Each of them is an uphill challenge, a herculean task and a hard not to crack. Even art, culture and literature reportings are not child's play as we have explained the precautionary measures and warnings there also. In this lesson, we will comprehensively and systematically discuss about Travelogue Reporting, Obituary Reporting, Conference Reporting and Seminar Reporting.

10.2.1 TRAVELOGUE REPORTING

A travelogue is an individual's account of journey to another city, town or place. It may be written report with factual details. It may also be a narrative story about personal impressions and experiences supported by images. Since it is reported like an essay, so it is often called travelogue writing instead of travelogue reporting. Hence, we may consider it as descriptive or narrative form of reporting.

A travelogue highlights the living style, culture, civilization and heritage prevailing the place of travel. While reporting the intro or lead of a travelogue, you may provide some background about the place or



city or town you are writing about and also describe your travelling conditions. Introduce the rare informations or eventual facts you want to convey to your reader based on the recordings and notes you have jotted down during your travel of the place.

Travel in itself is a very big education. It is basically an experience that leads to an extreme form of learning. Travelogues are also very instrumental in percieving the people of a place and their pursuits, their philosophy of life and their concerns, their lifestyles, plans, pleasures and sorrows.

Since the world is changing fast and taking a new turn of virtual global village with much better and quicker means of mobility, traveling is becoming exorbitantly popular activity particularly in today's globally competitive world marked by grueling lifestyle and increased work pressure. Most of us love to go for a holiday to relax and rejuvenate.

Travel reporting is a genre which is becoming increasingly popular. There are a variety of travelogue. It can be in the form of an article or a feature or a book, or a blog, or a diary or a journal or a podcast or a lecture or a narrated slide show or in virtually every written or spoken form of creation. There are number of examples of travelogues online in the form of "travel blogs". But all such travel blogs cannot be described as travelogues in true sense. This is mainly because of the fact that some of the reporters or writers are less concerned with giving personal accounts of their own experiences traveling than capturing internet search traffic by providing tips, suggestions, guidelines, experiences and observations about travel.

A traveling for entertainment and recreation must follow certain important tips:

1. The city or the town or the place chosen for travel must be in accordance with the weather condition.
2. The place must be in accordance with my budget.
3. The stay place or hotel or guest house must be suitable and again in accordance with the budget.
4. The food and water must be suitable or adjustable else it can cause many health-related issues leading to the sabotage of the entire travel plan.



-
5. There must be safety and security at the place of visit.

While reporting travel and tourism, generally there are some issues relating to above five points. And in the news report such issues should not be mixed despite the fact that the travel was full of pleasure, entertainment, recreation, education, experience, cultural exchange and exposure, purchases of useful and relevant items, gifts for friends, relatives and neighbours. Thus, the purpose of a travel reporting is to justify the purpose of the tour and the money that was spent. If the tour has been completed with minimum time, minimum energy, minimum cost, minimum resources then it will be described as effective tour or travel or trip. And this must be incorporated in the travel reporting with the fullest description and narration. Finally this type of report should be completed with a brief summary of overall experience, including reasons why others would wish to visit the location of narration.

10.2.2 OBITUARY REPORTING

It is a news story or news feature or sometimes even news article about recently deceased person. Though obituary reporting tries and tends to focus on the positive aspects of the subjects' life including the major achievements, awards and contributions. In the words of Nigel Farmdale, the Obituaries Editor of "The Times", "Obituaries should be life affirming rather than gloomy but they should also be opinionated, leaving the reader with a strong sense of whether the subject lived a good life or bad; whether they were right or wrong in the heading of their public affairs.

Now a glaring question arises as to how to report an obituary. Again, like travel reporting, it is a description or narration of a news events. First of all, this type of report must announce the death with date, time, place, reason of death and who are left behind the person and his major responsibilities. Second, it must recount the ins and outs of their life with descriptive approach. Third, it must include the deep relations and liabilities towards the surviving family members. Fourth, the obituary reporter may add a special message or poem. Fifth, the reporter must choose a suitable obituary picture or any other visual depiction. Last but not the least important is that it must include the comprehensive details about the funeral or the memorial.



Further, an obituary reporter must be fully acquainted with the purpose of an obituary in a newspaper. The basic purpose of an obituary is to notify the readers or the audience of that personality passing and systematically relay the comprehensive details of services.

Thus, the obituary report should include key factors about the person's life and death since his birth. That is to say that the person's name, birth place, age, date of birth, date of death, location and cause of death (if known). If it is a mystery then the reporter must mention that cause of his or her death is yet to be traced.

Conclusively, the followings are the tips for writing an obituary.

Intro or lead or first paragraph should include:

1. On (day, date), (full name of deceased) of (city of residence) passed away at the age of.... years
2. The family of (full name of deceased) is saddened to announce his/ her passing
3. It is with deep sorrow and much love that we mourn the passing of 'x'.
4. It is with profound sadness that the family of 'x' announce his/ her peaceful passing on (day, date) at the age ofyears.

The second paragraph should include the followings:

1. He/ She will be lovingly remembered by his/ her husband, children, grand children and other relatives.
2. He/ She will be dearly missed by her friends at the(name of the group/ organization)

The third and fourth paragraph will be optional depending upon the situation and circumstances of the deceased.

The fifth paragraph will include the following:



-
1. A visitation/ prayer service will be held at (time), on (day, date) at the location and address of funeral home.
 2. A memorial service will be held at a later date.

The sixth and seventh paragraph will be optional depending upon the situations and circumstances of the deceased.

The following is a sample of fictitious example of obituary reporting:

It is with extremely great sadness that the family of Ajmer Singh Asthana announces his sudden passing away on Monday, 24th October, 2022 at the age of 66.

Aasthana will be lovingly remembered by her wife of 60 years, Mrs. Sheetal Asthana, children, Bikku and Kikku, grand children, Rinku and Dinku and many other family members and friends.

A prayer service will be held on 26th October, 2022 at 10:00 a.m. at Pandit Deen Dayal Upadhyay Religious centre, Khagodia (Bihar).

10.2.3 CONFERENCE REPORTING

Such reporting is news of inauguration, technical sessions and valedictory. It also includes a critical analysis based on so many papers presented by various experts.

As we all know that a conference is based on comprehensive discussions, deliberations and exchange of views. It may vary from regional to national and national to international. It is generally reported in following manner:

First, a list of names, positions and organisations of all attendees.

Second, pay attention and note down every point and issue in details.

Third, observe the conference agenda and record whether there is any derivation from the agenda.

Fourth, write the report in a audience friendly language, style, format and structure.



For example, follow inverted pyramid style as far as it is possible. Also follow 5 Ws and one H. Then look at 7 Cs technique. And finally follow the golden rules and murphy laws (explained in earlier lesson) to the best possible extent.

Fifth, write the report with the fullest possible objectivity so that it may not appear biased or one- sided.

Thus maintain the ultimate thumb rule of reporting, i.e. factuality, accuracy, balance, fairness, reliability, authenticity, validity etc.

10.2.4 SEMINAR REPORTING

A seminar is a gathering or meeting of intellectuals of same or related subject. They interact, discuss deliberate and present their comprehensive ideas. It is relatively smaller than conferences. It sometimes also takes the shape of a workshop where exercises and assignments are also done. A seminar may be disciplinary or interdisciplinary, but a conference may be multi- disciplinary and transdisciplinary in nature. Though seminar and workshop are also minutely different, yet sometimes they are put together called Seminar-cum-workshop. A seminar is less formal and is a form of an audience institution or offered by a commercial or professional organisation.

Seminar reporting is very similar to conference reporting. But as explained, a seminar is minute, meticulous, having smaller thematic jurisdiction. Its reporting technique also follows the similar techniques of that of a conference reporting.

Hence, its reporting takes care of the following steps:

First, a list of all participants, paper presenters, chairpersons and co-chairpersons of technical sessions, key note speaker, chief guest, presiding officer, etc. is prepared.

Second, know the theme and sub- themes of all the technical sessions.

Third, collect most of the hand-outs, attend sessions and note down points and issues in detail.

Fourth, write the report.....



And at the end, factuality, accuracy, balance, objectivity, fairness, reliability, authenticity, validity etc. must be taken care here also like any other form of reporting.

10.3 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Note: 1) Use the space below for your answers.

2) Compare your answers with those given at the end of this lesson.

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION.

1. Travelogue is treated:

- (m) Descriptive form of reporting
- (n) Narrative form of reporting
- (o) Descriptive or narrative form of reporting
- (p) None of the above

2. Travel reporting is a genre which is increasingly emerging as :

- (m) Popular
- (n) Cheap
- (o) Costly
- (p) None of the above

3. Travel news does not follow the structure of :

- (m) Horizontal
- (n) Vertical
- (o) Inverted pyramid
- (p) Pyramid

4. Obituary is a news story about:

- (m) Surviving person
- (n) Recently deceased person
- (o) Seriously injured person



(p) None of the above

5. Seminar reporting gives the most importance to :

- (m) Who-lead
- (n) What-lead
- (o) Where-lead
- (p) When-lead

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS:

1. Travel is an.....account of journey.
2. Travel itself is a bigand exposure.
3. Travel reporting is awhich is becoming increasingly popular.
4. Obituary is a news story about recentlyperson.
5. Seminar reporters must bein nature.

10.4 SUMMARY

Reporting is a process of news gathering and then writing. It is a method of presentation of news by reportorial staff to the Chief Reporter/Chief of the Bureau who finally sends it to the desk. A travelogue is an individual's account of journey to another city, town or place. It may be written report with factual details. It may also be a narrative story about personal impressions and experiences supported by images. Since it is reported like an essay, so it is often called travelogue writing instead of travelogue reporting. Hence, we may consider it as descriptive or narrative form of reporting. It is a news story or news feature or sometimes even news article about recently deceased person. Though Obituary reporting tries and tends to focus on the positive aspects of the subjects' life including the major achievement, awards and contributions. Moreover, a Conference Reporting is news of inauguration, technical sessions and valedictory. It also includes a critical analysis based on so many papers presented by various experts.

On the other hand, a seminar reporting is reporting of a seminar which is a gathering or meeting of intellectuals of same or related subject interact, discuss deliberate and present their comprehensive



ideas. It is relatively smaller than conferences. It sometimes also takes the shape of a workshop where exercises and assignments are also done. A seminar may be disciplinary or interdisciplinary, but a conference may be multi-disciplinary and transdisciplinary in nature.

10.5 KEYWORDS

Reporting: It is a process of news gathering and then writing. It is a method of presentation of news by reportorial staff to the Chief Reporter/Chief of the Bureau who finally sends it to the desk.

Travelogue Reporting: A travelogue is an individual's account of journey to another city, town or place. It may be written report with factual details. It may also be a narrative story about personal impressions and experiences supported by images. Since it is reported like an essay, so it is often called travelogue writing instead of travelogue reporting. Hence, we may consider it as descriptive or narrative form of reporting.

Obituary Reporting: It is a news story or news feature or sometimes even news article about recently deceased person.

Conference Reporting: Such reporting is news of inauguration, technical sessions and valedictory. It also includes a critical analysis based on so many papers presented by various experts.

Seminar Reporting: It is reporting of a seminar which is a gathering or meeting of intellectuals of same or related subject interact, discuss deliberate and present their comprehensive ideas. It is relatively smaller than conferences.

10.6 SELF-ASSESSMENT TEST

1. What is travelogue? Discuss the new trends of travelogue.
2. Describe the various types of obituary news with suitable examples.
3. What is conference reporting? Describe the emerging trends of conference reporting.
4. What is conference reporting? How is it different from seminar reporting? Explain.
5. Describe the new trends of seminar reporting in this digital age.



10.7 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION

1. (c) Descriptive or narrative form of reporting
2. (a) Popular
3. (c) Inverted Pyramid
4. (b) Recently deceased person
5. (b) What-lead
6. (a) Experienced reporters

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS

1. Individual's
2. Education
3. Genre
4. Deceased
5. Extrovert

10.8 REFERENCES/SUGGESTED READINGS

1. Kamath,M.V. (1990) - "Professional Journalism" published by Vikas Publishing House Private Limited, New Delhi.
2. Shrivastav, K.M(1999)-"News Reporting and Editing" published by Sterling Publishing Private Limited, New Delhi.
3. Stovall,James Glen(2006)-"Writing for the Mass Media" 6th edition, published by Pearson Education Inc. and Dorling Kindersley Publishing Inc.
4. Tewari,Arjun(1994)—“Jansancharaur Hindi Patrakarita” published by JaibhartiPrakashan, Allahabad.
5. "Media Problems and Prospects (1983)" published by National Media Centre.
6. Rayudu, C.S. (1993) - "Media and Communication Management" published by Himalaya Published House, New Delhi.



7. COMMUNICATOR (VOL. XXXXI, NO. 28, APRIL - JUNE 1996) published by the Indian Institute of Mass Communication, New Delhi.

(Related and Suggested Websites retrieved on 25th September,2022).

1. <https://www.studocu.com/in/document/aligarh-muslim-university/mass-communication/types-of-reporting-lecture-notes-9/22272678>
2. <https://reutersinstitute.politics.ox.ac.uk/news/seminar-report-making-impact-journalism-todays-world>
3. <https://fellow.app/blog/meetings/meeting-report-tips-and-sample/>
4. <https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/newspaper-obituary>
5. <https://academichelp.net/creative-writing/write-travelogue.html#:~:text=A%20travelogue%20is%20a%20person's,an%20experiences%20supported%20by%20images.>
6. <https://www.google.com/search?q=what+is+news&rlz>.
7. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Concept+of+news&rlz>.
8. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Definitions+of+news&rlz>.



SUBJECT: REPORTING	
COURSE CODE: MSM-523 A	AUTHOR: DR MANOJ DAYAL
LESSON NO.: 11	
TYPES OF REPORTING: IV	

STRUCTURE

- 11.0 Learning Objectives
- 11.1 Introduction
- 11.2 Types of Reporting
 - 11.2.1 Human Interest Stories
 - 11.2.2 Environmental Reporting
 - 11.2.3 Health Reporting
- 11.3 Check Your Progress
- 11.4 Summary
- 11.5 Keywords
- 11.6 Self-Assessment Test
- 11.7 Answer to Check Your Progress
- 11.8 References/Suggested Readings

11.0 LEARNING OBJECTIVES

The lesson structure shall be as follows:

- Understand types of reporting
- Know human interest stories
- Describe environmental reporting
- Discuss health reporting

11.1 INTRODUCTION



So far we have focused on reporting politics, parliament, economy, business, finance, crime, science, sport, game, art, culture, literature, legislature, disaster, accident, travelogue, obituary, conference and seminar. Hence, we are exorbitantly exposed to the tools and techniques of a variety of report writing. Each of them have similarities in approaches as well as some dissimilarities on specific points and issues.

Since reporting is an art and craft of collecting, inquiring, investigating, exploring, digging and probing so in differently specific reporting like human interest stories, environmental reporting and health reporting all such skills are urgently required. However, their format, structure, presentation, language, style etc. may have some hairline differences.

11.2 TYPES OF REPORTING

We have comprehensively discussed a variety of reporting in our previous lessons. Now we will systematically explain and describe human interest stories, environmental reporting and health reporting.

11.2.1 HUMAN INTEREST STORIES

Human interest reporting is popularly known as human interest stories. It includes human interest news, human interest feature, human interest news feature and human interest featurised news.

Human interest stories are those in which man is directly involved in the interesting event.

For example, somebody eating glass, somebody eating snakes or irons, bee hub in the beard of a saint etc.

Such events can be presented in the form of hard news or in the form of a soft news or news feature or featurised news or news analysis or backgrounder as far as human interests are concerned.

Earlier interpretation and opinion were areas reserved for editorial columns. But now interpretation has become an integral part of reporter's duty. He not only collects and reports the facts, but also adds



explanation or interpretation wherever necessary. Here views or comments or interpretation are mixed based on the available news. This is a welcome step. But if it is other way round, then it is a curse.

In human interest stories, human interest is the prime content. They deal with ordinary persons in extraordinary circumstances. They touch the heart and the soul of the audience and appeal to his emotions. When human interest stories are written in the form of a news feature, then its news value content is lower as compared to hard news. Backgrounder, situations and story describing 'how' of an event come in thus category of features. When Charles Sobhraj and David Hall were arrested in Gia, the following news feature issued by PTI was carried by several newspapers (Shrivastav: 2000):

AS DRAMATIC AS THE ESCAPE

MUMBAI, April 7(PTI): 'Is this the way, you treat innocent foreigners?' Was how the ace criminal Charles Sobhraj reacted when the special squad of the Bombay police closed in on him and associate David Hall at the 'O Coqueiro' restaurant and bar at Purvorium.....

The above example is only the headline and the lead of the story. Here also the human being 'Charles Sobhraj' is the directly involved and is the main content. Hence, it is a human-interest story which can be categorised as news feature.

Similarly in the featurised news category of human interest stories, the hard news content with the news value is higher than that of a news feature.

Now let us give one more example of human interest story in the form of an anniversary feature. These who specialise in anniversary feature are called 'Calendar journalists'. That is to say that even this type of feature can have a human interest angle, which can be exemplified with the following human interest news story published in the 'Indian Express'.

WILL HER DREAMS DIE YOUNG

By Vichitra Sharma



NEW DELHI, March 7: Freedom, equality, justice are words 'Kunni' does not understand. Her quest in the life is to break loose from the shackles of economic drudgery.

"Yes, I too have dreams. Lots of dreams", she says face lighting up. Just a fleeting glimpse of sheer joy in the midst of poverty, humiliation, dirt and starvation.

"Dreams for my children, for my self and my husband." There is a long pause. "But there is no day or night for us. It's an endless span of anxiety and despondence.

The above is just a part of the story to better understand human interest story. The same story was published by 'The Times of India' with a different heading: "Horror of Poverty Keeps Her Haunting".

Again human interest stories may be written in the form of light or entertaining features which may or may not have a news peg. They are meant for entertainment. Middles appearing in several daily papers are examples of this kind of feature.

Further, human interest stories also deal with personalities which are relevant, significant or interesting. Such features should be high in human interest content. Obituaries also come under this category.

Thus, human interest reporting is quite different from other news story and a rare combination of news, feature, article, featurised news, news feature, news analysis, backgrounder, situations, story describing 'how', etc.

11.2.2 ENVIRONMENTAL REPORTING

This type of reporting is one of the fastest emerging areas of journalism and mass communication. This is mainly because environmental issues like natural distortion, noise pollution, water pollution, air pollution, ozone hole etc are one of the most challenging issues of society today. As a result, the environment is coming up as an independent beat and separate area of reporting. This type of reporting mainly pertains to the preparation, presentation and communication related to an organization's interaction with the natural environment. This is the most commonly related to self-reporting by organization despite the fact that reporting about other organisation by government agencies and several



other independent entities, non-governmental bodies and pressure groups turns out to be a significant pressure for environmental accountability.

There are mainly three types of environmental reporting: (1) Internal Executive Reporting, (2) Public Sustainability Reporting and (3) Shareholder Environmental Reporting.

(1) Internal Executive Reporting: This offers a general view of environmental outputs. It gives a superficial picture of what the business compliance situation is and alerts all of them to the emerging environmental issues.

(2) Public Sustainability Reporting: This is fast becoming status quo for big and small business and is a great way of showering off all the hard work your company is putting into being seriously more environmentally responsible. This type of reporting gets presented to the public which identifies corporate sustainability goals and not just what has been achieved so far.

(3) Shareholder Environmental Reporting: In this type of reporting, shareholders and other key decision makers are primarily interested which may be different from the factual data collected by the regulators. Shareholders are generally not interested in getting the exact quantity of greenhouse gas emissions which the processes released this year as compared to last year.

The main purpose of this type of reporting is that they can make informed decisions about natural resource management and set environmental policy. Moreover, this reporting helps us in understanding whether policy initiatives or environmental management approaches are efficient and effective over the period of time.

While writing environmental report, the basic principles of reporting as discussed earlier are followed as this is not treated as purely science or semi-science reporting.

11.2.3 HEALTH REPORTING

It relates to a variety curable and chronic diseases. This area of reporting is not as simple as it appears to be. It is a complex, cumbersome and complicated beat to cover. It needs a judicious balance of subject knowledge, research and sensitivity. When you are covering health news, you will be disseminating



information which will not just affect the general public but also medical professionals and even the government. As we all know that health is a very important and relevant part of government policy making and policy makers often depend on information, they receive from professional media persons.

Since health reporting is a very sensitive issue, so it should be handled with fullest care. There is a huge chunk of health-related information in the public domain. But all of them are not reliable and credible. A lot of eventual facts may be speculative and erroneous. Hence, it becomes the bounden duty of a health reporter to be minute, meticulous, sensitive, objective and fair. Health reporting are of various types which are as follows:

- (1) Business-oriented health reporting
- (2) Consumer health-related reporting
- (3) Corruption, paid news and unethical health reporting
- (4) Disease outbreaks related reporting
- (5) Drugs and disease related reporting
- (6) Health influencing reporting
- (7) Health infrastructure related health reporting
- (8) Health policy related reporting
- (9) Public and community health reporting

Thus, health reporting is so vital, sensitive, speculated and challenging that it should be handled with utmost care. It should not be taken casually or lightly. Generally, for a cub reporter, things will appear extremely complex and complicated to comprehend.

Hence, it is extremely difficult or almost impossible for a health reporter to convert the raw information into an easily understandable message without the knowledge of ins and outs of the sensitivity of the



issue. Such reports should be written in crystal clear language and style so that a common reader should easily grasp and comfortably understand the health news. The reporter must be very well aware of health procedures, terms and terminologies. In such sensitive matters, the reporter must check, cross-check and multi-check before finally submitting the story. All other styles, structures, rules, regulations, steps, etc. (as discussed comprehensively in previous lessons) must also be strictly followed for health reporting in addition to the precautionary measures discussed above.

11.3 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Note: 1) Use the space below for your answers.

2) Compare your answers with those given at the end of this lesson.

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION.**1. Human interest reporting is popularly known as :**

- (q) Human interest news
- (r) Human interest stories
- (s) Human interest feature
- (t) None of the above

2. What is the prime content in human interest stories ?

- (q) Nature
- (r) Film
- (s) Soap Opera
- (t) Human Interest

3. Environmental reporting relates to :

- (q) Nature
- (r) Natural distortion
- (s) Animals
- (t) Pyramid

4. Which entity is directly involved in human interest stories ?

- (q) Situation
- (r) Position



- (s) Human beings
- (t) None of the above

5. In which tone is the human interest stories written ?

- (q) Serious
- (r) Entertaining
- (s) Heavy
- (t) Scientific

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS:

1. Human interest stories are those in which is directly involved.
2. Human interest stories include
3. Human interest stories are meant for..... at most of the stages.
- 4.....hole is one of the most important environmental issues.
5. Health reporting is not asas it appears to be.

11.4 SUMMARY

Whether it is human interest stories or environmental reporting or health reporting for the news organization, reporting is a process of news gathering and then writing of the same. It is a method of presentation of human interest, environmental or health news by reportorial staff to the Chief Reporter/Chief of the Bureau who finally sends it to the desk. Human interest stories include human interest news, human interest feature, human interest news feature and human interest featurised news. Human interest stories are those in which man is directly involved in the interesting event. For example, somebody eating glass, somebody eating snakes or irons, bee hub in the beard of a saint etc. Human interest events can be presented in the form of hard news or in the form of a soft news or news feature or featurised news or news analysis or backgrounder as far as human interests are concerned. Again human interest stories may be written in the form of light or entertaining features which may or may not have a news peg. They are meant for entertainment. *Middles* appearing in several daily papers are examples of this kind of feature. Further, human interest stories also deal with personalities which are relevant, significant or interesting. Such features should be high in human interest content. Obituaries



also come under this category. Thus, human interest reporting is quite different from other news story and a rare combination of news, feature, article, featurised news, news feature, news analysis, backgrounder, situations, story describing 'how', etc. On the other hand, environmental issues like natural distortion, noise pollution, water pollution, air pollution, ozone hole etc are one of the most challenging issues of society today. As a result, the environment is coming up as an independent beat and separate area of reporting. This type of reporting mainly pertains to the preparation, presentation and communication related to an organization's interaction with the natural environment. This is the most commonly related to self-reporting by organization despite the fact that reporting about other organisation by government agencies and several other independent entities, non-governmental bodies and pressure groups turns out to be a significant pressure for environmental accountability.

There are mainly three types of environmental reporting: (1) Internal Executive Reporting, (2) Public Sustainability Reporting and (3) Shareholder Environmental Reporting. Moreover, health reporting has reached an alarming situation in India.

Moreover, health reporting which is very important and relevant today deals with the curable and chronic diseases along with medical organizational issues as well as achievements. Since health reporting is a very sensitive issue, so it should be handled with fullest care. There is a huge chunk of health-related information in the public domain. But all of them are not reliable and credible. A lot of eventual facts may be speculative and erroneous. Hence, it becomes the bounden duty of a health reporter to be minute, meticulous, sensitive, objective and fair. Health reporting are of various types which are as follows:(1) Business-oriented health reporting(2) Consumer health-related reporting (3) Corruption, paid news and unethical health reporting (4) Disease outbreaks related reporting(5) Drugs and disease related reporting(6) Health influencing reporting(7) Health infrastructure related health reporting(8) Health policy related reporting(9) Public and community health reporting

11.5 KEYWORDS

Reporting: It is a process of news gathering and then writing. It is a method of presentation of news by reportorial staff to the Chief Reporter/Chief of the Bureau who finally sends it to the desk.



Human Interest Stories: Such stories include human interest news, human interest feature, human interest news feature and human interest featurised news. Human interest stories are those in which man/human being is directly involved in the interesting event.

Environmental Reporting: Environmental issues like natural distortion, noise pollution, water pollution, air pollution, ozone hole etc are one of the most challenging issues of society today. Environmental reporting mainly pertains to the preparation, presentation and communication related to an organization's interaction with the natural environment. This is the most commonly related to self-reporting by organization despite the fact that reporting about other organisation by government agencies and several other independent entities, non-governmental bodies and pressure groups turns out to be a significant pressure for environmental accountability.

Health Reporting: It relates to a variety curable and chronic diseases. There is a huge chunk of health related information in the public domain. But all of them are not reliable and credible. A lot of eventual facts may be speculative and erroneous. Hence, it becomes the bounden duty of a health reporter to be minute, meticulous, sensitive, objective and fair.

11.6 SELF-ASSESSMENT TEST

1. What is human interest? Discuss why it is becoming so important in this stressful era.
2. What is human interest reporting? Discuss its new trends.
3. What is human interest story? How human interest story and human interest reporting is different? Explain.
4. Describe the various types of human interest news with suitable examples.
5. What is environmental reporting? Describe the emerging trends of environmental reporting.
6. Describe the various types of environmental reporting with suitable examples.
7. What is health reporting? How is it different from medical reporting? Explain.
8. Describe the new trends of health reporting in this digital age.
9. Describe the various types of health reporting with suitable examples.

11.7 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

**A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION:**

1. (b) Human interest stories
2. (d) Human interest
3. (b) Natural distortion
4. (c) Human beings
5. (b) Entertaining

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS:

1. Man/Human being
2. Featurisation
3. Entertainment
4. Ozone
5. Simple

11.8 REFERENCES/SUGGESTED READINGS

1. Kamath,M.V. (1990) - "Professional Journalism" published by Vikas Publishing House Private Limited, New Delhi.
2. Shrivastav, K.M(1999)-"News Reporting and Editing" published by Sterling Publishing Private Limited, New Delhi.
3. Stovall,James Glen(2006)-"Writing for the Mass Media"6thedition,published by Pearson Education Inc. and Dorling Kindersley Publishing Inc.
4. Tewari,Arjun(1994)—“Jansancharaur Hindi Patrakarita” published by JaibhartiPrakashan,Allahabad.
5. "Media Problems and Prospects (1983)" published by National Media Centre.
6. Rayudu, C.S. (1993) - "Media and Communication Management" published by Himalaya Published House, New Delhi.



-
7. COMMUNICATOR (VOL. XXXXI, NO. 28, APRIL - JUNE 1996) published by the Indian Institute of Mass Communication, New Delhi.

(Related and Suggested Websites retrieved on 25th September,2022)

1. <https://www.mjdrdypv.org/article.asp?issn=2589-8302;year=2021;volume=14;issue=3;spage=357;epage=358;aulast=Paul#:~:text=Health%20journalism%20is%20the%20dissemination,both%20print%20and%20digital%20media.>
2. <https://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/environment/research-monitoring-reporting/reporting/environmental-reporting-bc/about-environmental-reporting#:~:text=Environmental%20reporting%20refers%20to%20the,of%20Forests%20in%20British%20Columbia.>
3. <https://www.wikihow.com/Write-a-Human-Interest-Piece>
4. <https://www.studocu.com/in/document/aligarh-muslim-university/mass-communication/types-of-reporting-lecture-notes-9/22272678>
5. <https://www.google.com/search?q=what+is+news&rlz>.
6. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Concept+of+news&rlz>.
7. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Definitions+of+news&rlz>.



SUBJECT: REPORTING	
COURSE CODE: MSM-523 A	AUTHOR: DR MANOJ DAYAL
LESSON NO.: 12	
TYPES OF REPORTING: V	

STRUCTURE

12.0 Learning Objectives

12.1 Introduction

12.2 Types of Reporting

 12.2.1 Investigative Reporting

 12.2.2 Development Reporting

 12.2.3 Follow up

12.3 Check Your Progress

12.4 Summary

12.5 Keywords

12.6 Self-Assessment Test

12.7 Answer to Check Your Progress

12.8 References/Suggested Readings

12.0 LEARNING OBJECTIVES

The lesson structure shall be as follows:

- Understand types of reporting
- Know investigative Reporting
- Discuss interpretative reporting
- Discuss development reporting
- Throw light on follow- up



12.1 INTRODUCTION

Earlier, we have come across various definitions and concepts of reporting and news. Arun Shourie defines news as "When someone somewhere is trying to hide something, that is news". All other things are advertisements. This hints towards a different type of news or reporting called investigative reporting. Again both newspapers and news agencies have started mixing view with news. It has emerged as a new trend, leading to the mushrooming growth of interpretative reporting.

On the other hand, there is a school of thought which focuses on positivity of news and highlighting of our own achievement to encourage the readers instead of creating tension in their lives. This idea gave birth to development reporting. Again, journalism is practised not for any fashion, but a solution. And hence yet another school of thought emphasizes that a news should be continuously and repeatedly published in various break- ups till a solution comes. Hence, follow- up news or reporting concept emerged very fast and is extremely popular and prevalent today.

12.2 TYPES OF REPORTING

So far we have comprehensively discussed different types of reporting focusing on politics, parliament, economy, business, finance, crime, science, sport, game, art, culture, literature, disaster, accident, travelogue, obituary, conference, and seminar, human interest stories, environmental reporting and health reporting. Now we will systematically throw light on investigative reporting, interpretative reporting, development reporting and follow- up reporting.

12.2.1 INVESTIGATIVE REPORTING

Almost every news requires some investigation in an absolute sense. But when we talk of investigative reporting in a specific sense, it involves some major government development or big business or multinational company or corporation or some prominent political party or politician or some mafia king or other gangs indulged in illegal activities on large scale influencing the government. In this type of reporting, the journalist deeply investigate a single issue of social interest. It is a master detective angle which requires a lot of preparation and planning. In such reporting, the journalist tries to dive



deep into the facts, digs, excavates, probes and unveil matters that are concealed either intentionally by someone in a portion of power, or inadvertently, behind a chaotic mass of situations and circumstances. It analyses and exposes all important, useful and relevant facts to the public.

Media professor Steve Weinberg defines investigative as "Reporting through one's own initiative and work product, matters of importance to readers, viewers or listeners. Noted journalist Arun Shourie defines it as "When someone somewhere is trying to hide something that is news. All other things are advertisements."

Media theorist Hugo De Burgh defines it, "An investigative journalist is a man or woman whose profession is to discover the truth and to identify lapses from it in whatever media may be available. The act of doing this generally is called investigative journalism and is distinct from apparently similar work done by police, lawyers, auditors and regulatory bodies, not legally founded and closely connected to publicity."

Hence, primarily investigative reporting is exposing corruption in the field of politics or economy or society or education or religion or sports etc. Hence it requires courage, confidence, patience, perseverance, a sense of justice and commitment to the higher values of life. It is a long assignment and may take months or even more to get a story. It tells how powerful people promote nepotism, how the government conspires, how ministers grab and squander funds, how the high ranked officials deny promotions of the meritorious juniors, and above all how people suppress important facts.

Bob Woodward and Carl Bernstein were two cub reporters of the Washington Post in the USA. They exposed the US President Richard Nixon in "Watergate Scandal". It is considered to be one of the biggest scandals of the world. This scandal stemmed from then US President's continuous efforts to cover up its involvement in the 17th June, 1972 break-in of the Democratic National Committee headquarters at Washington, D.C. As a result, an impeachment process against the US President Nixon started. The Nixon White House tapes exposed him that he conspired to conceal the activities and later tried to use federal officials to deflect the investigation. And ultimately President Nixon was impeached and had to quit his office, thanks to the initiatives by two cub reporters. In this process, 69 officials were indicted and 48 officials who were top officials of US President Nixon's administration were convicted.



Yet another Indian example of scandals of Tihar Central Jail. Aswini Sarin was a reporter, when Arun Shourie was the executive editor of The Indian Express, in which the newspaper pulled off a smart journalistic coup which exposed a sordid flesh trade. He smelled some deep corruption in the jail after interacting with some released women prisoners, who hinted him that "If go inside the jail, then only you can understand and feel the entire problems." Then Ashwin committed a crime, bought a young girl called Kamla with pre-understand and got himself arrested in the Tihar Central jail. He investigated and started the process. Arun Shourie and Ashwani Sarin worked secretly and neither the employer of Indian Express Ramnath Goenka nor the wife of Aswani called Uma knew what was cooking in the Press. Arun Shourie was of the view that the Express wants to fight it out till the last, and this was the main motive behind the story. Shourie realised that since the matter was so sensitive that a straight story would not have the necessary impact. Hence, a deep investigation was needed. Shourie opined, "We will ask the court if law can be broken for a legitimate investigation and afterwards approach the court with a request to initiate steps to mitigate the evil laid bare by the investigation and thereby enlarge the scope of citizen rights.

Yet another investigation was carried out by Indian Express under the leadership of Arun Shourie. And that is "Bhagalpur blinding case". This time Arun Shourie assigned this task to another reporter from Bihar called 'Arun Sinha' who laid bare the horror of Bhagalpur blindings, which led to the PIL and flared up like a fire. It is important to mention here that most of the reporters feel that it is not worth exploring a severely dangerous situation to come out with such stories. But both Ashwani Sarin and Arun Sinha did get cash awards for their initiatives and received a lot of public applause.

Yet another example of investigative reporting of cement factory scandal by then Chief Minister of Maharashtra Mr Abdul Rahman Antulay. This was also initiated by Arun Shourie and his team from the Indian Express. Antulay had to battle a prolonged court case following the famous cement factory scandal that ultimately led to his exit from such a coveted post and also marked the decline of his political career in Maharashtra.

There are many such latest examples of investigative reporting like "Farmer oppose land acquisition for project" (By B.S. Malik, The Tribune, Chandigarh), "He finds abuse of Power" (By Saurabh Malik, The Tribune, Chandigarh), "Mining contractor being favoured: Kiran" (By Arun Sharma, The Tribune,



Chandigarh), forest officials put onus on other departments (By Surender Dhiman, The Tribune, Chandigarh) and Nailing the Aravalli lie (By Neha Dixit, Tehelka, 21 March, 2009).

12.2.2 INTERPRETATIVE REPORTING

This type of reporting is based on insight, hindsight and foresight. Here the reporters give the readers the background of the events, the inner layer of the story and describe the probability of the consequences. This types of a reporting requires a reporter to go beyond the routined and surficial fundamentals of events and provide a more in-depth report.

Lester Markel, Editor of The Sunday New York Times defines interpretative reporting as " It is reporting news depth with care, news refreshed with background materials to make it comprehensive and meaningful. It is objective judgement based on background knowledge of a situation or appraisal of an event which are essential part of news".

William Turner Catledge, Editor of The New York Times defines it as, "it is giving the reading public accurate information as fully as the importance of any story dictates".

Brant Houson, Executive Director of Investigative Reporters and Editors defined it as "it goes beyond the basic facts of an event or topic to provide context, analysis and possible consequences".

Curtis D. MacDongall in his pioneering book 'Interpretative Reporting' writes that when the first world war broke out, most of the people of the United States were taken aback. Their surprise knew no bounds. They were not in a position to explain its causes. This led to the variation in the trend and style of reporting. As a result, when the second world war took place in 1939, a large number of people in the United States expected it or at least knew it was likely to take place.

In India also, the frequency of interpretative reporting has gone up tremendously especially after the advent of television channels and social/digital media. An interpretative reporter must not be confined to his own discipline. Instead of being disciplinary in nature, he should be interdisciplinary, multidisciplinary, and trans-disciplinary. Hence, he should be very well acquainted with social sciences



like Sociology, Economics, Politics, Psychology, History, Philosophy, etc. Preferably, he should be aware of humanities, applied sciences, information technology, etc.

He must realise that such reporting is not an isolated incident, but an inevitable link to a chain of events. He should not be rigid, orthodox, conservative, superstitious, biased, or stereotype and should not adversely affect his intelligent perception and professional capability.

12.2.3 DEVELOPMENT REPORTING

Development is a continuous process of qualitative and quantitative change in a positive direction. And development reporting is that which not only highlights as to how much development has taken place, but also persuades and motivates the government to participate in developmental activities. This type of reporting involves writing about programmes and policies and the resulting economic change. It is a type of reporting and writing on topics related to the process of economic development (Steele, 2009, p. 401).

If we look at it in a broader perspective and wider spectrum, it not only includes economic growth or economic development. Other than economic development, it also includes social, political, educational, cultural, religious, spiritual, scientific, technological and environmental, etc. That is to say that it keeps an eye on overall growth in a balanced way. And such issues like economy, politics, society, education, culture, religion, spiritualism, science, technology, environment, etc are deeply interrelated, inter-linked, inter-connected, and inter-woven.

Thus, this type of reporting should bring about overall awareness among readers, listeners, viewers, users, and audience of even traditional and alternative media.

The concept of development is changing with the changing time. It also has different meaning in different countries. It is differently taken by people of different backgrounds. It is well said “what is the sauce for the goose may not be the sauce for the gander”. What is food for the cat, may not be the food for the rat.



What was development in 60's may not be the same in this new millennium. In 60's , growth in agriculture was considered the only factor for development, while the same concept shifted from agriculture to industry. Then industrial development was emphasized. But in the new millennium, a lot of industries have largely polluted out environment and ecological system. Hence, experts now emphasize on controlling environmental pollution and ecological balances.

In this way, the concept of sustainable development emerged among journalists and media persons including reporters . This type of development talks of a development which is long-lasting and stable and cares for the future generations. This includes health, education, art, literature, culture, social relations, family integration, rural re-orientation, and upliftment.

Thus, a reporter has to minutely and meticulously understand all these issues, aspects, problems, their possible remedies, prospects and write story accordingly. Hence, reporting development is hard, difficult and challenging task. More so because this type of reporting gets very little space in almost all the media.

12.2.4. FOLLOW UP

A follow-up is not required in a routined or generalized kind of a news item. There is a concept in journalism that a good reporter should follow a story till a solution comes or an action is executed also called "impact journalism".

When the problem is serious, stable, long-lasting, and authorities are continuously turning a deaf ear, then follow-up is urgently required. Basically a follow-up is to provide additional, missing, hidden, unexplored (earlier), amended additional or supplementary information. When a complete picture is created by the reporter, then even for the authorities, it becomes convenient to execute. In most cases, the authorities take action, when the problem is presented in a systematic, evaluative, comparative, objective and reliable manner. Thus, it is repeatedly reported if the event is unresolved, serious and unexpected.

12.3 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS



Note: 1) Use the space below for your answers.

2) Compare your answers with those given at the end of this lesson.

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION

1. What type of angle is adopted in investigative reporting?

- a) Right
- b) Normal
- c) Master detective
- d) Wide

2. What happened to US President Nixon after investigative journalism by two cub reporters?

- a) Punishment
- b) Impeachment
- c) Imprisonment
- d) Ex-communication

3. Who were the two cub reporters involved in the Watergate Scandal?

- a) Basket & Scissor
- b) Shanon & Weaver
- c) Woodward & Bernstein
- d) Lasswell & Bradock

4. In Watergate Scandal, how many officials were indicted?

- a) 66
- b) 67
- c) 68
- d) 69

5. What was the name of the journalist from Bihar who was assigned Bhagalpur Blinding Case by Editor-in-Chief of Indian Express Mr Arun Shourie?

- a) Arun Kumar
- b) Arun Prasad
- c) Arun Sinha
- d) Arun Saxena

**B. FILL IN THE BLANKS**

1. Noted journalist Arun Shourie defines investigative journalism as: "When someone somewhere is trying to..... something, that is news and all other things are advertisements.
2. Woodward was one of the cub reporters in the Watergate Scandal.
3. Bernstein was another cub reporter in the Watergate Scandal.
4. The then Maharashtra Chief Minister..... was involved in the Cement Factory Scandal.
5. Development reporting is.....process of qualitative and quantitative change in the positive direction.

12.4 SUMMARY

Whether it is investigative reporting or interpretative reporting or development reporting or follow up, reporting is a process of news gathering and then writing. It is a method of presentation of news by reportorial staff to the Chief Reporter/Chief of the Bureau who finally sends it to the desk. Investigative reporting is a master detective angle which requires a lot of preparation and planning. In such reporting, the journalist tries to dive deep into the facts, digs, excavates, probes and unveil matters that are concealed either intentionally by someone in a position of power, or inadvertently, behind a chaotic mass of situations and circumstances. It analyses and exposes all important, useful and relevant facts to the public.

On the other hand, interpretative reporting is based on insight, hindsight and foresight. Here the reporters give the readers the background of the events, the inner layer of the story and describe the probability of the consequences. This types of a reporting requires a reporter to go beyond the routine and superficial fundamentals of events and provide a more in-depth report.

Further, development reporting is a combination of development and reporting. Development is a continuous process of qualitative and quantitative change in a positive direction. And development reporting is that which not only highlights as to how much development has taken place, but also persuades and motivates the government to participate in developmental activities. As far as follow up reporting is concerned, there is a concept in journalism that a good reporter should follow a story till a



solution comes or an action is executed also called "impact journalism". When the problem is serious, stable, long-lasting, and authorities are continuously turning a deaf ear, then follow-up is urgently required. Basically a follow-up is to provide additional, missing, hidden, unexplored (earlier), amended additional or supplementary information. When a complete picture is created by the reporter, then even for the authorities, it becomes convenient to execute.

12.5 KEYWORDS

Reporting: Whether it is investigative reporting or interpretative reporting or development reporting or follow up, reporting is a process of news gathering and then writing. It is a method of presentation of news by reportorial staff to the Chief Reporter/Chief of the Bureau who finally sends it to the desk.

Investigative Reporting: It is a master detective angle which requires a lot of preparation and planning. In such reporting, the journalist tries to dive deep into the facts, digs, excavates, probes and unveil matters that are concealed either intentionally by someone in a portion of power, or inadvertently, behind a chaotic mass of situations and circumstances. It analyses and exposes all important, useful and relevant facts to the public.

Interpretative Reporting: This type of reporting is based on insight, hindsight and foresight. Here the reporters give the readers the background of the events, the inner layer of the story and describe the probability of the consequences. This type of reporting requires a reporter to go beyond the routined and superficial fundamentals of events and provide a more in-depth report.

Development Reporting: Development is a continuous process of qualitative and quantitative change in a positive direction. And development reporting is that which not only highlights as to how much development has taken place, but also persuades and motivates the government to participate in developmental activities.

Follow up: There is a concept in journalism that a good reporter should follow a story till a solution comes or an action is executed also called "impact journalism". When the problem is serious, stable, long-lasting, and authorities are continuously turning a deaf ear, then follow-up is urgently required. Basically a follow-up is to provide additional, missing, hidden, unexplored (earlier), amended additional



or supplementary information. When a complete picture is created by the reporter, then even for the authorities, it becomes convenient to execute.

12.6 SELF-ASSESSMENT TEST

1. What is investigative reporting? Discuss why it is becoming so important in the present era.
2. What is human interpretative reporting? Discuss its new trends.
3. What is development reporting ? How development reporting and investigative reporting are different? Explain.
4. Describe the various types of investigative news with suitable examples.
5. What is follow up reporting? Describe the emerging trends of follow up reporting.
6. Describe the various types of follow up reporting with suitable examples.

12.7 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION

1. (c) Master detective
2. (b) Impeachment
3. (c) Woodward & Bernstein
4. (d) 69
5. (c) Arun Sinha

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS

1. Hide
2. Bob
3. Carl
4. Abdul Rahman Antulay
5. Process

12.8 REFERENCES/SUGGESTED READINGS



1. Kamath,M.V. (1990) - "Professional Journalism" published by Vikas Publishing House Private Limited, New Delhi.
2. Shrivastav, K.M(1999)-"News Reporting and Editing" published by Sterling Publishing Private Limited, New Delhi.
3. Stovall,James Glen(2006)-"Writing for the Mass Media"6thedition,published by Pearson Education Inc. and Dorling Kindersley Publishing Inc.
4. Tewari,Arjun(1994)—“Jansancharaur Hindi Patrakarita” published by JaibhartiPrakashan,Allahabad.
5. "Media Problems and Prospects (1983)" published by National Media Centre.
6. Rayudu, C.S. (1993) - "Media and Communication Management" published by Himalaya Published House, New Delhi.
7. COMMUNICATOR (VOL. XXXXI, NO. 28, APRIL - JUNE 1996) published by the Indian Institute of Mass Communication, New Delhi.

(Related and Suggested Websites retrieved on 25th September,2022)

1. <https://en.unesco.org/investigative-journalism>
2. https://www.safetyreporting.hhs.gov/SRP2/en/FPSRHelp/safety_reporting/submit_a_follow-up_report.htm
3. <https://egyankosh.ac.in/bitstream/123456789/7498/1/Unit-5.pdf>
4. <https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/abs/10.1080/1461670X.2018.1467783?journalCode=rjos20>
5. <https://www.studocu.com/in/document/aligarh-muslim-university/mass-communication/types-of-reporting-lecture-notes-9/22272678>
6. <https://www.google.com/search?q=what+is+news&rlz>.
7. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Concept+of+news&rlz>.
8. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Definitions+of+news&rlz>.



SUBJECT: REPORTING	
COURSE CODE: MSM-523 A	AUTHOR: DR MANOJ DAYAL
LESSON NO.: 13	
NEWS ANALYSIS REPORTING	

STRUCTURE

13.0 Learning Objectives

13.1 Introduction

13.2 News Analysis Reporting

 13.2.1 Difference between backgrounder and news analysis

 13.2.2 Difference between editorial and news analysis

 13.2.3 Difference between feature and news analysis

 13.2.4 Difference between interpretative reporting and news analysis

 13.2.5 Political news analysis

 13.2.6 Economic news analysis

 13.2.7 Social news analysis

13.3 Check Your Progress

13.4 Summary

13.5 Keywords

13.6 Self-Assessment Test

13.7 Answer to Check Your Progress

13.8 References/Suggested Readings

13.0 LEARNING OBJECTIVES

The lesson structure shall be as follows:

- Understand News Analysis Reporting



- Know Difference between backgrounder, editorial, feature, interpretative reporting and news analysis
- Discuss Political news analysis
- Discuss Economic news analysis
- Throw light on Social news analysis

13.1 INTRODUCTION

We know that news is something new, rare, matchless, unique, uncommon having public interest and freshness. News analysis is basically analysing the news with indepth thought. Unlike interpretative reporting, it is more an analysis of new news. But interpretative reporting is more a news than interpretation. News analysis has some hairline differences with that of backgrounder, editorial, feature and interpretative reporting which we will discuss systematically, minutely, meticulously and comparatively to the 'extent possible'. We will focus more on exemplifying news analysis.

13.2 NEWS ANALYSIS REPORTING

It is an integral part of our today's journalism. More so after the growing threats from television channels and social/ digital media. News analysis is generally written on the events which are occurring, reoccurring and likely to occur again and again in the future. Like Indo- Pak relationship is a glaring example. So many attempts have been made to make the relations cordial since independence till today. But nothing has happened. No concrete output. L.K. Sharma from The Times of India has written several news analysis on this issue. No doubt it is based on the backgrounder. But it is entirely different from that of a backgrounder, which we will discuss. In a way it becomes a promiscuous mixture of backgrounder, interpretative reporting, editorial and feature. But there is a hairline difference between all of them. No doubt a good news analysis reporter can write a good editorial, when he will reach at that position. As we all know that after television was started in India, a big threat came up before the print media in an overall analysis.

News items were already broadcasted on television a day before with text, visual, audio, graphics, animation, multi- colour etc. Hence, the Editor's Guild of India decided to protest it and submitted a



memorandum to the Ministry of Information and Broadcasting that news should not be broadcast on television. Television should continue as an entertainment media. But the MIB did not accept it and allowed the television to continue news as per its policy.

As a result, no option was left with the print media. Then they focussed on elegant photograph, communicative cartoons, affective animation, juicy scandals, spying reporting and above all "News Analysis". Thus, there was fast growth of News Analysis in print media for survival and subsistence.

13.2.1 DIFFERENCE BETWEEN BACKGROUNDER AND NEWS ANALYSIS

A backgrounder is written in a chronological order of the events. It is written in a periodic sequence irrespective of its news value or news worthiness. But news analysis does not follow any periodic chronology. It follows news criteria, news value or news worthiness. For example, attempts have been made to develop a cordial relation between India and Pakistan since independence. A backgrounder will highlight the events of 1948, then 1949, 1950 and so on in a chronology. But news analysis will take the most important and memorable issue like "Shimla Negotiation" as introduction. Then it may take recent visit of Prvej Musarf. Hence, news analysis will consider it in the descending order of importance. And unlike news, news analysis will incorporate views and opinions also. However, a good news analyst presents the news in such a manner that it becomes self-analysed. It tries to maintain objectivity. It maintains a level of being unbiased. It also maintains balance and fairness.

13.2.2 DIFFERENCE BETWEEN EDITORIAL AND NEWS ANALYSIS

An editorial is a comment of the news organisation on current burning issue with higher public interest. It is a quick and speedy comment on the same day or within a couple of days. Editorial is generally written on the lead or second lead story of a newspaper.

News analysis, on the other hand, is written on an event which is occurring again and again with greater public importance. The reporter also anticipates with his experience that a particular event is going to flare up. Hence, he plans to write a news analysis accordingly. However, both editorial and news analysis maintain the journalistic objectivity, balance and fairness.



13.2.3 DIFFERENCE BETWEEN FEATURE AND NEWS ANALYSIS

A feature is an entertaining piece of write-up. It is lively, interesting, literary, light, humourous, satirical etc. On the other hand, news analysis is an analysis of news with background maintaining factuality, accuracy, balance, objectivity, fairness, validity, reliability and authenticity. Feature is the product and outcome of our heart, whereas news analysis is the product and outcome of our mind.

Since feature is a literary journalistic creativity, so it carries some degree of imagination, whereas news analysis does not hold any degree of imagination.

However, both feature and news analysis are specific presentation of facts maintaining the objectivity of journalism.

13.2.4 DIFFERENCE BETWEEN INTERPRETATIVE REPORTING & NEWS ANALYSIS

Both of them look identical, similar and synonyms. Interpretative reporting is basically an interpretation of report with supporting background material. But news analysis is much more than an interpretative reporting. Of course, a news analysis will contain backgrounder with descending order of news worthiness. News analysis is broader and wider in its perspective. It dives deep into the facts with insight, hindsight and far sight. It also talks about the prospects of the emerging situation in the events. News analysis tends to have some impact factor. A good news analyst continues to write the story till a solution comes out or an action taken. In a way, it is a follow-up procedure also with high degree and advanced approach of journalism. Further an interpretative reporting is more a reporting with interpretation whereas analysis is more an analysis with some amount of long-lasting news.

13.2.5 POLITICAL NEWS ANALYSIS

This analyses, the recurring events in the field of politics. It is desirable here to give an example of political news analysis which is as follows:

A Clear Message

By Pranay Kumar



It is clear from the election results that out of the five states, Bharatiya Janata Party is going to form the government in four and the Aam Aadmi Party in one. Except for Punjab, no anti-incumbency wave was visible in any other state. Rather, in Uttar Pradesh, after 1985, for the first time, a Chief Minister would take oath again for the second time in a row. In Uttarakhand, too, there was a trend to change the Government after every election. This victory of BJP is also important because, from all the newspapers, channels, social media outfit and many other platforms of expression, there was a continuous claim of widespread public anger against BJP. Sometimes in the name of Farm Laws, and other times in the name of the Citizenship Amendment Bill and sometimes the alleged neglect of the backward-Dalits-minorities, the Bharatiya Janata Party (BJP) was constantly being put in the dock. Not only is it quite clear from the election results that this time the people have completely rejected the divisive tendencies like caste, region and religion, but also the violent and anarchist politics in the name of the peasant movement and CAA resistance.

These assembly election results are concrete and living evidence of the deep connection of almost all classes and castes of the majority society to a vast identity or a broad identity in place of small identities. It is clear from the results that the public did not take the claims and statements of many leaders and caste "kshatrapas" like Swami Prasad Maurya, Dara Singh Chauhan, Dharam Singh Saini, Omprakash Rajbhar to Jayant Chaudhary very seriously. Out of these, Swami Prasad Maurya and Dharam Singh Saini even failed to save their seats. Rather, the vote percentage in the election results of different castes and classes lying in different Assembly constituencies sends out the message that every class and caste has its own fundamental and independent thinking and that each one has its collective interests and concerns, enemies and friends.

"One should never make the mistake of considering any class or caste-specific as private property before leaving or joining any alliance, the concerned parties and leaders must consult with their respective base voters. While BJP got tremendous success in attracting the traditional vote-bank of Mayawati in Uttar Pradesh, on the other hand, the Congress did not get any benefit in publicising the Chief Minister Charanjit Singh Channi as a Dalit face in Punjab.

It is evident that the policies and intentions of any party were more important than the face-slogans-promises of the leaders for the general public or even for a particular caste. There was solid work done



on the ground, and there was sharing in the sorrow and happiness. It is the result of BJP'S all-inclusive policy and all-around development that it got more than 34 per cent votes of Jatav and 45 per cent votes of Schedule Castes.

The unprecedeted and historic victory of BJP in Goa, Manipur, Uttarakhand and Uttar Pradesh proves that the people have stamped victory on its policy, working style of development and good governance. They got an immense benefit for taking public welfare schemes to the ground and ensuring that the Government's schemes and programs reach out to the beneficiaries. In the country's largest state, Uttar Pradesh, Chief Minister Yogi Adityanath rose to the occasion by showcasing hard work and activism, his impeccable and transparent personality, his image of a strict administrator who does not compromise with the law and order in any way, his readiness for the safety of women and sensitivity, regular visits and inspection at every district-centre despite being infected in the crisis period of COVID-19. His activism made the administration to take the students and migrants laborers trapped in other States to safe homes, during the three-wave lockdown, the work done by the Government and the quick and welfare decisions were undertaken, record vaccination, Instead of appeasement, serious efforts and initiatives have been taken to realise the slogan of Sabka Sath, Sabka Vikas, Sabka Vishwas and Sabka Praya on the ground of reality. Ignoring stature, influence-reach etc, Government demonstrated courage and determination to crackdown on criminals and musclemen, stopping neglect of families and casteist politics and rare articulation and rivalry on national and cultural issues etc. proved to be very important, effective and decisive. It is a good sign that the participation of women was more decisive than that of men in these elections.

In Uttar Pradesh, where the vote percentage of men was 59.6, that of women was 62.2. In 43 out of 75 districts, women voted more than men, and where women voted more, the BJP got more seats. They expressed their faith in the team and leader who worked better on these issues, giving top priority to issues like security-health-employment by going against the wishes of the families or husbands. Schemes like Ujala, Ujjwala, Jan Dhan, housing, free ration were appreciated by women. BJP also got special benefits for the all-around development of temples and pilgrimage centres and working on basic facilities like roads, electricity and water.



This time the majority of the society was alert towards the prevailing and fake politics of the biased and alleged "Ganga-Jamuni Tehzeeb" being done in the name of pseudo-secularism and so-called progressiveness. They have also been able to see and understand very well the crime and corruption that flourish under cover of separate identity and caste politics. The public often rejected the tussle between the state and the centre, and it was considered appropriate and preferable to show trust in the double engine government. This was the reason that not only is BJP going to form the government again in four of the five states, but despite being the ruling party, it increased by 1.6 per cent in Uttar Pradesh, 1.3 percent in Goa and 3.0 per cent in Manipur.

The victory of the Aam Aadmi party (AAP) in Punjab is indeed historic and remarkable. But this is more worrying for congress than BJP. Congress will have to think about how it can overcome factionalism and infighting and keep the party united by curbing the ambitions of its regional leaders. After Rahul Gandhi, now Priyanka Gandhi Vadra has also failed to boost the morale of her workers and win the trust of the public. Therefore, there is a serious crisis before congress regarding its central leadership. Some political analysts started projecting the AAP as an alternative to the BJP as soon as it won Punjab. Some are promoting it as a diminution in the charisma of Prime Minister Modi, which is a baseless and simplified conclusion. Rather the fact is that the charisma of Prime Minister Modi has not only persisted but has increased election after election. It can be estimated from this that the Prime Minister held a total of 32 rallies in Uttar Pradesh, which had an impact on about 200 seats, of which BJP won 160 seats, i.e. their strike rate was 80 per cent. On the other hand, Priyanka Gandhi remained active in 150 seats, and her vote percentage also decreased from 6.3 in 2017 to 2.7 per cent.

Arvind Kejriwal also could not make any special impact in states like Goa, Uttar Pradesh, Uttrakhand except Punjab. The Aam Aadmi party had made big claims of victories in these states before the elections. Even in the victory of Punjab, local issues were more effective and decisive than the central leadership of AAP. in fact, it is more a defeat of old and established party like Congress, and Akali Dal than a victory for AAP. Primetime political analysts may or may not believe it, but the truth is that the AAP has yet to travel miles to emerge as an alternative to the BJP, abandon the opportunistic politics of accusations and free electricity-going beyond populist issues like water and presenting a serious and



sustainable model of governance. For a nationwide expansion, along with holistic thinking and clear policy, there is also a great need for healthy intention.

Punjab being a border state, has been witnessing separatist and terrorist elements trying to raise their heads from time to time. Without meeting the national unity and integrity criterion, the acceptance of the Aam Aadmi party or Arvind Kejriwal will remain limited and doubtful, even if the agenda-based media publicise them as telling them a serious, strong and nationwide option of the future.

13.2.6 ECONOMIC NEWS ANALYSIS

It presents news analysis relating to economic affairs. Here in this example Prasoon Sharma analyses this issue in the form of economic news analysis entitled "Rupee Gaining Global Currency".

Rupee Gaining Global Currency

By Prasoon Sharma

The internationalisation of the Indian Rupees (INR) has greater ramifications including promoting exports, saving foreign currency reserves, facilitating trade with countries under sanctions and adding strength to the Indian Rupees (INR) in forex trade.

Annually, India exports around 45 million kg of tea to Russia. But because of the current war between Russia and Ukraine and the sanctions imposed by the United States and Europe, tea exports had dropped by 10 per cent between January and April compared to the same period last year. In 2019, India exported 53 million Kg of tea to Iran. India could not participate in dollar-denominated trade. Hence, a rupee-rial trade mechanism was put in place in 2018.

Amid geopolitical tensions, inflation and high petroleum products, the Narendra Modi Government courageously aims for generating \$450 billion or \$500 billion worth of exports in 2022-23 after recording merchandise exports of \$420 billion in 2021-22. The RBIS historic decision to position INR as an international currency may benefit to build a stronger lead with the help of the operational readiness put in place to increase exports.



India's shipment of goods in June rose by 16.78 per cent year-on-year to \$37.94 billion, slipping from 20.55 per cent growth in May 2022 and 48.34 per cent in June 2021. The trade deficit rose to \$25.63 billion on account of a steep increase in gold and crude oil imports, as per the government's preliminary data.

India, previously, signed deals with the UAE for rupee-based trade and now the Reserve Bank of India has a clear path to support this deal. Iran too has been looking to export to India using the Rupee. Venezuela has expressed interest.

Furthermore, parting from current provisions of the foreign Exchange Management Act where the final payment has to be in free foreign exchange (USD, Euro etc) except for Nepal and Bhutan, now the final payment to all countries can be in INR.

The hegemony of US dollars as a currency of trade has been challenged in the past by the Euro, British pounds and yen. But, still, the US dollar controls the majority of International trade.

The current sanctions by the US and EU to kick Russia out of the SWIFT system, without considering the stakes of other countries including India have impinged India to consider internationalisation of INR.

It is time to unleash the full potential of India's Unified Payments Interface (UPI) which has been accepted in Singapore, Bhutan, UAE, Nepal and France. Addressing Digital India Week in Gandhinagar, Ashwini Vaishnav, Minister of Electronics and Information Technology, stated that India is in discussions with 30 countries for UPI.

Furthermore, NPCI is planning to promote the UPI system to 32 million NRIs. Last year, NRIs remitted \$87 billion, the biggest inflow of for any country tracked by the world bank. Efficacious overseas expansions by NPCI would give India a home-grown alternative to SWIFT. Further, UPI's association with foreign nations will increase trade, travel and remittance flows between the countries and lowers the cost of cross-border remittances.



Since India imports more than it exports, the country will save foreign currency by doing trade in INR. For e.g. India can pay for oil imports from Russia in INR. Further, in 2021-22, India's trade with Russia was worth \$13.1 billion. If all this trade can be done through INR-Rouble, India can save \$13.1 billion as foreign currency reserves. According to the Sri Lankan High Commission, in 2020 India was Sri Lanka's second-largest trading partner with bilateral merchandise trade amounting to around \$3.6 billion. If all this trade can be done through INR, India can save \$3.6 billion as foreign currency reserves.

SBICAP Ventures Limited (SVL), a subsidiary of State Bank of India recently signed an MoU with the Ministry of External Affairs for establishing the Trilateral Development Cooperation Fund (TDC Fund) for joint projects with global partners.

The TDC Fund will contribute to India's commitment of approx. Rs.175 cr. (£17.5 million) to the Global Innovation Development Fund (GIP Fund)- anticipated to be established in association with the Foreign, Commonwealth and Development Office (FCDO) under the India-UK Global Innovation partnership (GIP).

The GIP Fund will invest in mainly Indian MSME enterprises that are within the goals of the GIP and have successfully proven implementation of social impact innovations that can be replicated and scaled up in third countries. GIP Fund will support India innovators that are at an advanced phase but lack capital for expansion to other developing countries. It is highly recommended to partially or fully make such global funds INR-based especially for investing in countries from Africa and Latin America.

Now, the Startup India initiative should embark on global outreach by helping Indian startups go global. The Startup India initiative already has many "International bridges" like India Finland Tech Hub. Post-Covid-19 world is looking for innovations, solutions, and entrepreneurs who can revive the economy and humanity's survival. Now is the time to leverage India and Indian goodwill and global acceptance. Thus, the Startup India initiative should open global "handholding offices" to help the Indian startups establish offices, collaborations, and partnerships.



According to the National Association of Software and Services Companies, India's software and services exports grew from 8.1 per cent to \$147 billion in the fiscal year 2020. The exports through STPI units had grown from Rs 17 crore in the financial year 1992 to Rs 5.69 lakh crore in the financial year 2022. In POST-COVID-19 era, STPI should allow global entrepreneurs to establish and manage a software company digitally - from anywhere in the world - without the need for travel. E-company registration will help global entrepreneurs to hire India software talents and boost software exports. A complementary UPI ID and INR bank account should also be provided.

With the world economy falling into recession, COVID-19 pandemic and the Russia-Ukraine war are subverting the paradigm of the world order, Bharat and millions of Bharatiya can shape this significant adjustment of the world order for the furtherance of the Akhand Bharat mission.

13.2.7 SOCIAL NEWS ANALYSIS

It mainly contains the issues and aspects of child youth, crime, women etc. An example of Social News entitled "From Job-seekers to Job creators" by Ratnajyoti Dutta is depicted here for even better understanding.

From Job-seekers to Job creators

By Ratnajyoti Dutta

The North East is a picturesquely endowed region of our country. The region, comprising seven sister States with one brother, Sikkim, has been endowed with abundant natural resources, not to mention rich flora and fauna. The region boasts rich wildlife and a colorful, diverse indigenous cultural heritage.

The region, despite its richness, lags behind the rest of India in terms of economic development as basic infrastructure facilities are yet to be developed to the desired level. For an economy to take off, facilities like roads, highways, power supply, and a skilled workforce are needed to help the overall development process.

The 'Act East Policy' of Prime Minister Narendra Modi's led Government gave a big push to the overall development process of the Northeast region. Immediately after assuming power for the first time in



2014, Prime Minister Modi said the country's overall development and economic growth would be sustainable and equitable, if the Eastern region, including the North East, developed in a balanced way in sync with the national growth process.

The word 'employment' is close to my heart. When I was in middle school during the early eighties, I came across the word 'vocational training' when the Assam state employment and craftsmen training department was set up a Vocational Rehabilitation Centre (VRC) of the central government in Guwahati. As a school-going child, I got a first-hand idea about the correlation between vocational training and employment. That vocational training institute was meant for specially challenged people. The training institute used to work closely with the Industrial Training Institute (ITI), Guwahati. Later, as a graduate student of Economics, I realised the linkages of vocational training in raising the employability factor of a youth seeking employment in a job market.

India had already embarked upon the path of economic reforms by the time I finished postgraduate studies in Econometrics during the mid-nineties. The era of licenses and permits gradually vanished, and the Information Technology revolution spread over the country. We entered the new millennium hoping to achieve a high economic growth rate. Overall, economic development initiatives gathered momentum. With the advent of the Modi-led Government in 2014, a new narrative started in the country's economic growth. The country's growth should be balanced in nature, and for that to happen, the growth process in the North East region has to be accelerated.

India needs to urgently promote the spread of vocational education to raise the employability factor of its workforce. In South Korea, the Asian economic giant, as much as 96 per cent of the workforce received formal vocational training. The rates stood at 75 per cent and 52 per cent in countries like Germany and the United States. In contrast, less than 5 per cent of India's workforce received formal vocational training, according to the 12th Five Year Plan (2012-17).

In 2022, we need to put the development process in place so that by 2040, the North East region will be on par with the rest of the country in terms of the economic growth process.



Prime Minister Modi has put immense stress on the speedy development of the North Eastern States. He has given the mantra of 'Purvoday', consisting of a range of policy reforms that fundamentally change the drivers of development in the region.

For that to happen, the basic input of human capital needs to be groomed, keeping in mind the future requirements of machine learning, artificial intelligence, and the like in the overall growth process.

The employability of the labour force can be developed by focusing on vocational studies from an early stage of life. The National Education Policy 2020 highlights this important aspect of imparting vocational training at an early stage of education to avoid school dropouts.

The NEP tries to synchronize secondary education with vocational studies so that the nation's youth, including those in the North East, become skilled to carry forward the mission of 'Aatma Nirbhar Bharat'.

Orienting school education towards vocational studies and holistically personality development will induce a youth to take up the challenge of start-up activities to create job opportunities in the later stages of life.

At least 50 per cent of learners through the school and higher education system have exposure to vocational education by 2025.

The concept of 'Aatma Nirbhar Bharat' aims to capture the benefits of innovation at grassroots levels, and encourage youth entrepreneurs and start-ups to forge closer ties with industry. In recent years, the North Eastern States have gained laurels in innovation in science and technology, biodiversity, organic farming, renewable energy, nanotechnology, petrochemical refining, the flora and food industry, the tea sector, and the like.

The addition of vocational courses to the degree curriculum will be an added advantage, said Dharmendra Pradhan, Education and Skill Development Minister.



But it is more important to note that India now is not looking at degree-holders as 'job-seekers' but rather as 'job-creators', the Minister said at the 27th convocation of North Eastern Hill University (NEHU) on May 21.

Vocational training and a rich knowledge of local customs and traditions can only enrich the students' portfolios, Pradhan said. The employability factor in the Eastern and North Eastern regions can be harnessed by realising the potential of the young population.

On the need to utilise this demographic potential to its fullest, Pradhan said the eight North Eastern states have more than two crore children and youth aged 3-23 years. Of these two crores, about 1.25 crores of children are enrolled in schools, colleges, or other higher education institutions in these states.

"Even if we consider that some more children are studying in other States or outside of India, almost a third of children do not seem to be in the education system," Pradhan said on May 20, inaugurating the North East Research Conclave at the Indian Institute of Technology (IIT), Guwahati.

The minister said that the gap strated increasing from secondary education and added that bringing everyone into our education system-be it schools, colleges, or skill development institutes- was extremely important.

Under the NEP, the Central Government is in the process of setting up the National Research Foundation (NRF). The Foundation will ensure that the research ecosystem in India is strengthened.

The NRF will act as an umbrella structure for encouraging research and development and implementing some other educational reforms. The other major aim of proposing an NRF is to improve linkages between research and development, academia, and industry. A total proposed outlay for the foundation would be Rs 50,000 crores over five years. The North East region will gain from this initiative in promoting skills among its youth, resulting in enhanced employability.

NEP aims to overcome the social status hierarchy associated with vocational education and requires integrating vocational education into mainstream education in all educational institutions in a phased manner.



"Beginning with vocational exposure at early ages in middle and secondary school, quality vocational education will be integrated smoothly into higher education," the NEP said. The incorporation of vocational studies into the education chain will increase the level of employability of youths. Let this objective of spreading vocational studies in the NEP get absorbed by the Northeastern states on a priority basis to promote the theme of 'Employment through Employability'.

Let the Northeast region start implementing the National Education Policy, 2020 objectively to stay ahead of the curve in the overall national growth process.

13.3 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Note: 1) Use the space below for your answers.

2) Compare your answers with those given at the end of this lesson.

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION.

1. What is the speed of news agency reporting?

- (u) Much slower than newspaper
- (v) Slower than newspaper
- (w) Faster than newspaper
- (x) Equal to newspaper

2. What is the difference between backgrounder and news analysis?

- (u) Backgrounder is faster
- (v) News analysis is faster
- (w) News analysis is slower
- (x) Backgrounder is chronologically written, while news analysis is written in accordance with news value

3. What is the difference between editorial and news analysis?

- (u) Editorial is bigger
- (v) News analysis is bigger
- (w) News analysis is smaller



- (x) Editorial is instant comment on burning issues, while news analysis is on frequently occurring issues.

4. What is the difference between feature and news analysis?

- (u) Feature is general
- (v) News analysis is particular
- (w) Feature is light, but news analysis is serious
- (x) None of the above.

5. What is interpretative reporting?

- (u) Report interpretation with backgrounder
- (v) Report interpretation without backgrounder
- (w) Report interpretation with news analysis
- (x) Report interpretation without news analysis

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS:

1. An editorial is a..... of newspaper on current burning issue.
2. News analysis is written on the topic which is.....again and again .
3. A backgrounder is written in aorder of the events.
4. A feature is an.....piece of write up.
5. Interpretative reporting is basically an..... of report with supporting background material.

13.4 SUMMARY

Whether it is news agency reporting or newspaper reporting or magazine reporting , reporting is a process of news gathering and then writing. It is a method of presentation of news by reportorial staff to the Chief Reporter/Chief of the Bureau who finally sends it to the desk. As far as news agency is concerned. it is generally written on the events which are occurring, reoccurring and likely to occur again and again in the future. But news analysis does not follow any periodic chronology. It follows news criteria, news value or news worthiness. For example, attempts have been made to develop a cordial relation between India and Pakistan since independence. A backgrounder will highlight the events of 1948, then 1949, 1950 and so on in a chronology. But news analysis will take the most important and memorable issue like "Shimla Negotiation" as introduction. Then it may take recent visit



of Prvej Musarf. A good news analyst, however, presents the news in such a manner that it becomes self- analysed. It tries to maintain objectivity. It maintains a level of being unbiased.

A backgrounder, on the other hand, is written in a chronological order of the events. It is written in a periodic sequence irrespective of its news value or news worthiness.

Moreover, interpretative reporting is based on insight, hindsight and foresight. Here the reporters give the readers the background of the events, the inner layer of the story and describe the probability of the consequences. This types of a reporting requires a reporter to go beyond the routined and surficial fundamentals of events and provide a more in-depth report. Futher, an editorial is a comment of the news organisation on current burning issue with higher public interest. It is a quick and speedy comment on the same day or within a couple of days. Editorial is generally written on the lead or second lead story of a newspaper. A feature, on the hand, is an entertaining piece of write- up. It is lively, interesting, literary, light, humourous, satirical etc.

13.5 KEYWORDS

Reporting: Whether it is news agency reporting or newspaper reporting or magazine reporting , reporting is a process of news gathering and then writing. It is a method of presentation of news by reportorial staff to the Chief Reporter/Chief of the Bureau who finally sends it to the desk.

News Analysis: News analysis is generally written on the events which are occurring, reoccurring and likely to occur again and again in the future. But news analysis does not follow any periodic chronology. It follows news criteria, news value or news worthiness. For example, attempts have been made to develop a cordial relation between India and Pakistan since independence. A backgrounder will highlight the events of 1948, then 1949, 1950 and so on in a chronology. But news analysis will take the most important and memorable issue like "Shimla Negotiation" as introduction. Then it may take recent visit of Prvej Musarf. A good news analyst, however, presents the news in such a manner that it becomes self- analysed. It tries to maintain objectivity. It maintains a level of being unbiased.

Backgrounder: A backgrounder is written in a chronological order of the events. It is written in a periodic sequence irrespective of its news value or news worthiness.



Interpretative Reporting: This type of reporting is based on insight, hindsight and foresight. Here the reporters give the readers the background of the events, the inner layer of the story and describe the probability of the consequences. This type of a reporting requires a reporter to go beyond the routine and superficial fundamentals of events and provide a more in-depth report.

Editorial: An editorial is a comment of the news organisation on current burning issue with higher public interest. It is a quick and speedy comment on the same day or within a couple of days. Editorial is generally written on the lead or second lead story of a newspaper.

Feature: A feature is an entertaining piece of write-up. It is lively, interesting, literary, light, humourous, satirical etc.

13.6 SELF-ASSESSMENT TEST

1. What is news analysis? Discuss why it is becoming so important in the present era.
2. What is backgrounder? Discuss its new trends.
3. What is editorial? How news analysis and editorial are different? Explain.
4. Differentiate between news analysis and backgrounder.
5. Differentiate between news analysis and editorial.
6. Differentiate between news analysis and interpretative reporting.
7. Differentiate between news analysis and feature.
8. Differentiate between backgrounder and editorial.
9. Differentiate between backgrounder and feature.
10. Differentiate between backgrounder and interpretative reporting .

13.7 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION:

1. (d) Faster
2. (d) Backgrounder is chronologically written
3. (d) Editorial is instant comment on burning issues, while news analysis is on frequently occurring events.



4. (c) Feature is light ,but news analysis is serious.
5. (a) Report interpretation with backgrounder.

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS:

1. Comment
2. Occurring
3. Chronological
4. Entertaining
5. Interpretation

13.8 REFERENCES/SUGGESTED READINGS

1. Kamath,M.V. (1990) - "Professional Journalism" published by Vikas Publishing House Private Limited, New Delhi.
2. Shrivastav, K.M(1999)-"News Reporting and Editing" published by Sterling Publishing Private Limited,New Delhi.
3. Stovall,James Glen(2006)-"Writing for the Mass Media"6thedition,published by Pearson Education Inc. and Dorling Kindersley Publishing Inc.
4. Tewari,Arjun(1994)—“Jansancharaur Hindi Patrakarita” published by JaibhartiPrakashan,Allahabad.
5. "Media Problems and Prospects (1983)" published by National Media Centre.
6. Rayudu, C.S. (1993) - "Media and Communication Management" published by Himalaya Published House, New Delhi.
7. COMMUNICATOR (VOL. XXXXI, NO. 28, APRIL - JUNE 1996) published by the Indian Institute of Mass Communication, New Delhi.
8. ORGANISER(VOL.73,No.40/2022) pp 36-38 ,published by Bharat Prakashan(Delhi) Limited, New Delhi
9. ORGANISER(VOL.74,No.5/2022) pp 26-28 ,published by Bharat Prakashan(Delhi) Limited, New Delhi



-
8. ORGANISER(VOL.74, No.4/2022) pp 38-40 ,published by Bharat Prakashan(Delhi) Limited, New Delhi

(Related and Suggested Websites retrieved on 25th September,2022)

1. <https://en.unesco.org/investigative-journalism>
2. <https://egyankosh.ac.in/bitstream/123456789/7291/1/Unit-2.pdf>
3. https://www.safetyreporting.hhs.gov/SPR2/en/FPSRHelp/safety_reporting/submit_a_follow-up_report.htm
4. <https://egyankosh.ac.in/bitstream/123456789/7498/1/Unit-5.pdf>
5. <https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/abs/10.1080/1461670X.2018.1467783?journalCode=rjos20>
6. <https://www.studocu.com/in/document/aligarh-muslim-university/mass-communication/types-of-reporting-lecture-notes-9/22272678>
7. <https://www.google.com/search?q=what+is+news&rlz>
8. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Concept+of+news&rlz>
9. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Definitions+of+news&rlz>



SUBJECT: REPORTING	
COURSE CODE: MSM-523 A	AUTHOR: DR MANOJ DAYAL
LESSON NO.: 14	
REVIEW & CRITICISM: I	

STRUCTURE

- 14.0 Learning Objectives
- 14.1 Introduction
- 14.2 Review & criticism
 - 14.2.1 Book review & criticism
 - 14.2.2 Types of book review
 - 14.2.3 How to review a book?
 - 14.2.4 Film review & criticism
 - 14.2.5 How to review a film?
 - 14.2.6 Television review & Criticism
 - 14.2.7 How to review a television programme ?
- 14.3 Check Your Progress
- 14.4 Summary
- 14.5 Keywords
- 14.6 Self-Assessment Test
- 14.7 Answer to Check Your Progress
- 14.8 References/Suggested Readings

14.0 LEARNING OBJECTIVES

The lesson structure shall be as follows:

- Understand review and criticism



- Know about book review and criticism
- Describe film review and criticism
- Discuss television review and criticism

14.1 INTRODUCTION

Review is a highly creative and innovative job. It is very easy to read, listen or watch a programme but very difficult to review it. It is basically to view again. It is

re-examining or re-considering of something judiciously in order to resolve upon if changes are required. It is looking back at something to check, re-check multi-check, remember or be clear about something. It is to take a retrospective view of the past. A review is designed to provide a valuable, solid, informative, critical summary of a well defined subject.

14.2 REVIEW AND CRITICISM

A review is to generally make the audience aware of the ins and outs of the subject from thematic, technical and production point of view and also what are the limitations of that subject. And a criticism is a detailed analysis, comparison and evaluation of the subject, specially a literary, philosophical or political. A review is generally penned down by a review written. A critic, on the other hand, is an expert in a particular field. So he may comment on or expand on a particular thought.

Though these two terms review and criticism are often used interchangeably, there is a hairline difference between them. Criticism is written by the subject specialist whereas reviews are written by people who have an interest in that particular field. Thus, criticism is considered to be more authentic and reliable than reviews. In this way, we may briefly say that criticism is written by a critic whereas the review is written by a reviewer. Critics are experts in a particular field, whereas a reviewer is a person who is interested in a specific topic. Criticism may include a deep and rigorous analysis of the individual components of the work whereas the rating of a review can contain general information, an overall impression and a personal opinion. A criticism may not be read or understood by everyone, whereas a review may be read and understood by anyone.



14.2.1 BOOK REVIEW AND CRITICISM

It is a brief plot summary of the book. A book review evaluates the book and offer a gentle recommendation to the readers. It may be primary source, opinion piece, summary review or scholarly review. Reviewing a book is an art and craft. It is a matter of practice. Constant and continuous reviewing practice leads to more perfection. It goes on improving through trial and error method and gets a professional touch after a prolonged effort.

Now the question arises as to why a book is reviewed? What is the purpose? The answer is that books are reviewed with a view to helping the readers know about the ins and outs of the book. The purpose of book review is to expand its circulation and readership on the basis of its own merit. If a book is not up to the mark, then the reviewer has to highlight this element also even if it adversely affects the circulation and readership.

Now a question arises as to who can review a book. What should be the standing and status of the reviewer? The answer is that simply the reviewer should have the desirable knowledge of the subject and the theme covered in it, about the author, his specialisation, his reputation and his previous works.

Again a question arises as to what is the right time to review a book. When should a book be reviewed? The answer is that the book should be reviewed before it comes to the market or right after it reaches the stand.

As far as the issue of placement of a book review is concerned, generally it is published either in the feature page or as special columns or pages for book review as far as a newspaper is concerned. Sometimes it is also published on the "Op-Ed Page". In a magazine or journal, generally the book review is published in the last section.

A sample book review would be- Recently published book authored by **Chetan Bhagat** :

2 States: The Narrative Of My Marriage

It's an Indian interstate marriage story. Krish, a Punjabi man, and Ananya, a Tamil Brahmin woman, are in love. Paneer and coconut are married in paranthas and idlis. Chetan dedicates this novel to his in-laws



in his distinctive manner. He urges that the book be viewed as a work of fiction even though it was inspired by his own family and experiences in the country.

IIM-Ahmedabad is where the book's first few pages were set up. After their initial encounter in the canteen and a few days of collaborative study, Krish and Ananya eventually fall in love. Up until their families meet, they are enjoying life. Before they realise that they might not be able to persuade their family to endorse their marriage, it takes some time. The twist in the story is that they prefer getting married with their parents' permission than going it alone and eloping. Even the idea of a Tam Brahmin and a Punjabi marrying in another state is still frowned upon in India.

The story begins when two families cross paths on the college's commencement day. The remainder of the narrative focuses on Youngistan's battle with Oldistan to obtain marriage licences. While both of them try to gain approval from their respective families, the boy tries to gain acceptance from the girl's family and the girl seeks to gain acceptance from the boy's family. Because I don't want to ruin the surprise, I won't give anything away here. Let me emphasise that it has a nice conclusion to calm the worries of individuals who get too caught up in stories. In fact, if it has a depressing conclusion, how can it be turned into a Bollywood film?

A humorous portrayal of the cultural distinctions between families from the north and south of India is done quite nicely.

One of the best aspects of this book is the humour. brimming with excellent metaphors and similes.

You would like this book more if you are a Chetan Bhagat fan than his previous book, Three Mistakes of My Life.

If you don't like Chetan's works or haven't read any of them, I recommend picking up this book if you want to pass a dull afternoon with "a short read."

I would advise you to avoid this book if you enjoy literary fiction and classics and read a lot of Tharoor, Seth, Roy, and Ghosh.



I don't particularly enjoy Chetan's books, to be honest. His books are really simple to read, thus I like to read them. Yes, I do respect what he has accomplished with his books in terms of popularity, notoriety, and of course wealth. I appreciate his use of language and the way he infuses the story with his nuanced thoughts. I believe his best work is still to come.

14.2.2 TYPE OF BOOK REVIEW

There is no well-defined types of book review. But on the basis of derived deduction, it may be categorised into the following types:

1. A specialist reviewing a book for a specialized magazine or specialized newspaper.
2. A specialist reviewing a book for a popular newspaper or magazine.
3. A generalist reviewing a book for a popular newspaper or magazine.
4. A generalist only reporting a book as to what the book is all about?
5. A newspaper or magazine only highlighting the cover of the book, i.e. its author's name, publisher's name or price.

In fact, the last two types should not be categorised as book reviews in true sense, but as superficial introduction to books. Moreover, due to lack of space and specialist book reviewers, this trend is very popular these days even in prominent magazines like India Today and Frontline.

14.2.3 HOW TO REVIEW A BOOK?

Some of the book reviewers only go through the blurb or the few descriptive words inside the cover jacket of the book written in bolder letters (or in different colour) and in bigger point size. Such reviewers know the author only from the blurb of the cover jacket. But this is the most unhealthy trend of reviewing a book. Some of the reviewers write a book review only by reading another review on the same book. This is yet another undesirable trend of reviewing a book. But due to the fast marketisation of book selling these trends are on the rise.



In fact, a book reviewer has very a big responsibility. His writings can make or mark the circulation and readership of the book. So he should at least read the book twice. First time to know as to what the book is all about. That means to go through the book as a reader. Second time, to look into the book as a critic or reviewer. Other striking features of reviewing a book is as mentioned below:

1. A book reviewer must highlight as to what the book is about.
2. The reviewer must look into the facts whether it us up to the expectation of the reader.
3. He must find out whether there is anything new, innovative, or creative in the book.
4. Then the reviewer must access its merits, demerits, literary level, stylistic approach and technical aspects.
5. The reviewer should point out whether the book is a scholarly piece of work.
6. He should observe whether it is socially relevant.
7. He must deeply study as to how the work is as compared to works of past of like nature. For example, a general-interest boom cannot be compared with a special-interest book cannot be compared with a special-interest book.
8. The reviewer should try to predict the probable impact of the book on the society.
9. There are two kinds of readers. One is general. The other is a specialist. A good reviewer has to cater to both the types of readers. So the content should be focussed on both the general audience and the specialist. If it is written for a specialised newspaper or magazine then it can have some serious treatment. Similarly, the content should be lighter and not too serious if it is written for a popular newspaper or magazine.
10. The reviewer must interpret how effective is the book specially from the point of view of information, awareness, education and entertainment etc.
11. The fundamental principles of writing are also applicable to book reviewing.



-
12. Finally the review must contain creative, constructive, productive and reformatory comment. It should not be written with a view to just looking down upon the work of the author.

14.2.4 FILM REVIEW AND CRITICISM

A film review is usually to make the viewers aware of the ins and outs of the film from thematic, technical and production point of view and also what are the limitations of the film. Reviewing a film is a highly creative and innovative job. It is very easy to view a film , but very difficult to review it. A film is a rare combination of beauty and brain and a rare observation of man and manner. It is a harmonious synchronization of a variety of components put in a reasonable, logical and judicious manner.

Writing a film review is an skilled art and creative craft because many elements are working simultaneously at a given point of time. Thus film review is a process of deep observation, analysis and interpretation of the film. It involves minutely viewing the film and meticulously commenting on it. It involves predicting the probable impact of the society.

In order to review a film, the author should have the desirable knowledge of the theme and the subject covered in the film about, its producer, director ,other top performers , technicians and their previous works.

The followings quick tips may be treated as important for writing a film review:

1. The very first thing to be noticed minutely and meticulously is what the story is about? Whether the film is logical, sensibly arranged, natural or just of a routine nature.
2. The reviewer must see whether the film is up to the mark Whether it is up to the expectation of the audience.
3. She/he should observe whether there is anything new, innovative and original in the film.
4. She/he should point out whether it is a creatively intellectual piece of work.
5. She/he should be able to find out whether it is socially, culturally and politically relevant.



6. She/he must discuss the merits and demerits of the film.
7. How is the film from technical point of view, i.e., how is the direction ?How has the director handled the theme ?How is the production and the other technical aspects ?How is the dialogue, its literary level and stylistic approach ?The reviewer is supposed to look into all these.
8. What is the level of sensitivity towards the issue of theme ?The reviewer must study this and forward before the readers.
9. A film is incomplete without dialogue. She/he must critically comment on the dialogue.
10. Then she/he is expected to deeply analyse and interpret the cinematography of the film.
11. The casting, location, editing, music, lyrics and business of the film are indispensably important factors while reviewing a film.
12. The reviewer must compare the film with previous such films of like nature. For example, an art film can be compared with an art film or a commercial film can be compared with another commercial film. Similarly a low-budget film can be compared with a high-budget film only when there themes are similar.
13. There is a variety of film audience. But broadly speaking, the audience may be categorized as general and expert. A good reviewer should try to cater to both these audiences. So the intro should always be focused on general audience. content should be focused on experts if the reviewer is writing for a specialized film magazine or periodical. Reversely, the content should be focused general audience if the review is written for a popular newspaper or magazine. But in all cases the reviewer should be focused on making the review highly readable.
14. The reviewer should also try to look into the fact as to how effective the film is.
15. The reviewer must follow the basic principles of sources, medium, message and receiver.
16. Finally, the reviewer must contain creative, constructive, productive and reformatory comment. It should not be written with a view to looking down upon the work of the producer or director.



Example of a FILM REVIEW ‘TANHAJI: The Unsung Warrior’



Directed By : Om Raut

Produced By : Ajay Devgn , Bhushan Kumar , Krishan Kumar

Written By : Prakash Kapadia

Starring : Ajay Devgn , Saif Ali Khan , Kajol

Music By : Ajay-Atul , Sachet- Parampara , Mehul Vyas

Score By : Sandeep Shirodkar

Release Date : 10 January 2020



The movie follows the life of Tanhaji Malusare, a fearsome Maratha warrior who was a close military advisor to Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj. The legendary Battle of Sinhagad, which took place on February 4, 1670, included Tanhaji taking on Rajput warrior Udaybhan, who fought for Aurangzeb against the Marathas. Ajay Devgn, Saif Ali Khan, and Kajol feature in the 2020 Indian Hindi-language biographical historical action film *Tanhaji: The Unsung Warrior*. Om Raut is the director, and Ajay Devgn, Bhushan Kumar, and Krishan Kumar are the producers. The plot is set in the 17th century and centres on Tanaji Malusare's attempts to retake the Kondhana castle after it is given to the Mughal emperor Aurangzeb, who gives control of it to his dependable guard Udaybhan Singh Rathore.

The filmmakers adhere to the story's main points, but the specifics seem to have been inflated and fictionalised with gusto. Archetypes replace actual people, places, and civilizations. The Mughals are ruthless, opportunistic invaders; the Marathas are all honourable, swaraj-worshiping soldiers.

The scene is set for a vast epic that runs for about two hours and fifteen minutes but is really more of an action story than a historical drama. It is the finest method to appreciate this movie as well. When Tanhaji first appears in the movie, he and his soldiers are swooping down on the enemy in a ravine and defeating them with cunning and pure bravery. It's a gorgeous entry.

Ajay Devgn plays Chhatrapati Shivaji's dependable lieutenant Subedar Tanhaji Malasare, the heroic hero of the movie's title, who, according to history, never backed down from a combat. However, Saif Ali Khan, who plays the movie's antagonist, seems to be having more fun.

Saif portrays Udaybhan, a Rajput general who wears black robes, a thick beard, a deceptive smile, and an endless appetite for cruelty. He is the Rajput general of the Mughal emperor Aurangzeb. Let's just say that he shares similarities with Ranveer Singh's portrayal of Alauddin Khilji.

Kajol appears in the cast as Tahaji's wife Savitri, and the scenes between the two actors profit from their natural chemistry. Luke Kenny was cast in the part of Aurangzeb in a brilliant move, while Sharad Kelkar does a good job of conveying the dignity of Chhatrapati Shivaji.

Under the terms of the Treaty of Purandar, Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj (Sharad Kelkar) handed over 23 forts to Aurangzeb (Luke Kenny), including the strategically significant Kondhana (now known as



Sinhagad). Rajmata Jijabai (Padmavati Rao) vowed to go barefoot until the Marathas retook the fort. Four years later, in order to prevent Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj from retaking the fort, Aurangzeb dispatches Udaybhan (Saif Ali Khan) with a sizable army and a powerful cannon known as a "naagin."

While preparing for a war, Shivaji Maharaj decides against sending his dependable lieutenant and close friend, Subedar Tanhaji Malusare, to the front lines because his son is soon to be married. Tanhaji begs Shivaji Maharaj to give him a chance to win Kondhana when he learns of the "mohim" (campaign). His silent pillar of support is his wife Savitribai (Kajol). Tanhaji is able to get access to the fort that is thought to be invincible despite the wicked intentions of some, such as Pisal (Ajinkya Deo). Tanhaji engages in a bloody duel with the deadly Udaybhan. Although the plot is well-known, numerous artistic licences have been utilised in order to grab the audience's attention.

The movie's action sequences are very potent, and watching them in 3D will enhance them even more. Excellently performed scenes show the Marathas using guerilla tactics to scale the fort, and Tanhaji and Udaybhan's last fight is nothing short of amazing. The two men engage in a brutal fight to the death while firing a deadly cannon at Shivaji's Rajgad Fort.

Ajay Devgn plays the honourable warrior with an unmistakable sincerity. To his credit, he manages to give the hero a likeable humanity while mouthing heavy speech that frequently uses terms like "bhagwaa dhwaj." However, Saif Ali Khan steals the show as Udaybhan and really commits to the part. His cruel general is a man who, in one scene, sends a helpless guard falling to his death after screaming in his face. He also throws cold water on sleeping prisoners. Additionally, Kajol is of the highest calibre and has a more distinctive appearance.

What else can I say about the monumental battle's climax? This movie has some of the best action sequences and choreography I've ever seen in a historical drama or, really, in any movie. Period. Even if the pre-speed climax's picks up, the action scenes and combat choreography are likely to leave you on a high. Ajay Devgn and Saif Ali Khan's fight is everything you might want it to be. While Saif Ali Khan's combat scenes have been created in a way that they match his characterization, Ajay Devgn is recognised as the action star and he shines in it.



Swanand Kirkire and Anil Verma wrote the song's words, and Ajay-Atul, Sachet-Parampara, and Mehul Vyas composed the music. Sandeep Shirodkar's background music is one of the movie's standout features. You won't forget Sachet-song Parampara's Ghamand Kar. While the VFX is occasionally spectacular and occasionally dubious, the cinematography is strong.

In his first Hindi film, director Om Raut demonstrates his talent for narrative. He keeps a tight hold on the movie and skillfully strikes a balance between the drama and the emotions. The movie features a twist on the "ghorpad" (monitor lizard) perspective, which historians debate.

CGI is used extensively and is seamlessly integrated into the story. It aids in mounting the movie on the proper scale so that it can make a significant impact.

Tanhaji: The Unsung Warrior is one of the greatest historical epics to have come out of Bollywood, and it is a pure entertainment. Ajay Devgn's brilliant performance, Saif Ali Khan's scene-stealing performance, Sharad Kelkar's perfect performance, the superb action sequences and choreography, the emotional depth, and Om Raut's skillful direction make it a must-see. It succeeds on a number of fronts, including outstanding acting, intense action, striking visuals, and most importantly, it tells a historical tale that deserved to be presented with this level of fire and emotion.

14.2.5 TELEVISION REVIEW AND CRITICISM

A television review is usually to make the viewers aware of the ins and outs of the television programme or serial from thematic, technical and production point of view and also what are the limitations of the film. Like book reviews, TV programme reviewing is also a matter of practice. Constant and continuous reviewing leads to more perfection. It goes on improving through trial and error and gets a professional touch after a prolonged effort.

It is also a skilled art and creative craft where deep observation, analysis and interpretation are equally important. Generally television programme reviewing does not help the viewers know about the programmes well in advance and decide about watching it, because it is published after the programme is already broadcast.



Thus, it neither helps the viewers nor the producers. It may help the producers do better in their next such programmes. But in western countries, specially in the US, the reviewer gets an opportunity to view the programme well in advance. Hence, the review is also published well in advance. Thus the review helps the viewers decide whether to watch the programme or not.

This attempt, however, has been made in India, too but only partially. For example, the Video magazine "Newstrack" produced by "India Today" was regularly reviewed well in advance. Its cassettes were sold separately and were regularly telecast on TV. It reached the viewers well in advance and helped them decide whether to watch the programme or not.

14.2.6 HOW TO REVIEW A TELEVISION PROGRAMME?

The reviewer must keep the following quick points in mind while writing a TV programme review:

1. The reviewer must highlight what the programme is about.
2. The reviewer must look into the fact whether the programme is up to the mark?
3. He should find out whether there is anything innovative, creative or new in the programme.
4. Then he should assess its merits and demerits from production point of view and content point of view. The reviewer should see the performance of the characters, direction and other technical aspects.
5. The reviewer should point out whether the programme is a good piece of work.
6. He should look into the fact whether the programme is socially relevant and important.
7. He should investigate as to how the work is as compared to the work of the past of like nature. For example, a general-interest programme cannot be compared with a special-interest programme.
8. The reviewer should try to visualise the probable impact of the programme.



9. There are different types of viewers of television programmes as TV reaches a wide range of places and people. A good reviewer has to cater to all types of viewers. So the content should be lighter and enjoyable form of writing, if it is written for a popular newspaper or magazine. Similarly, the content should be somewhat serious in treatment and sober in nature.
10. The reviewer must find out as to how effective is the programme from the awareness point of view- whether there is conceptual, linguistic, audio and visual clarity, continuity, conciseness, credibility correctness and the completeness.
11. The fundamental principles of writing is also applicable to the TV programme reviewing.
12. Finally, the review must contain creative, constructive, productive and reformatory comment. It should not be written with a view to tarnishing the image of the programme producer intentionally.

Example of TV REVIEW : ' Yeh Jaadu Hai Jinn Ka'



Genre : Drama , Fantasy , Romance

Created By : Gul Khan , Mrinal Jha

Directed By : Atif Khan

Produced By : Gul Khan , Karishma Jain

Starring : Vikram Singh Chauhan , Aditi Sharma

Running Time : 22 Minutes

Channel : Star Plus

This could be a great change for you if you enjoy supernatural fantasy dramas and are tired of naagins and chudails.

Gul Khan, the creator of various popular shows including Ishqbaaz, Nazar, and Kullfi Kumarr Bajewala, just debuted a brand-new supernatural fantasy programme called Yeh Jaadu Hai Jinn Ka. The show, which stars Vikram Singh Chauhan and Aditi Sharma in the key roles, centres on a Jinn and the effects of his wants on a family, particularly a young man. It also tells the tale of a romance between a Nawab who lives in the shadow of the Jinn and the angelic daughter of a prostitute.

Three buddies are in a car at the beginning of the show, discussing Jinn and his demonic characteristics. One of them tries to persuade the other that there are Jinns, and while they aid in people's wish fulfilment, the Jinn also takes something from the people in exchange, and getting rid of it is difficult. Jinn, a creature that resembles a human and is wearing a black hooded robe, is soon seen approaching their car in an unusually large black shadow. Then the Jinn wrecks the vehicle. Aman Junaid Khan (Vikram Singh Chauhan), a Nawab with magical abilities and a pet eagle named Bazigar, is then introduced to us.

Aman is under the spell of Jinn, whose mystery is linked to his deceased father, who committed terrible acts with Jinn's assistance, but now Aman is being haunted by the consequences of his sins and Jinn's malevolent goals. Due to their conviction that Jinn will have what he desires from Aman, his mother



and grandma are afraid. The creators also established the plotline that Aman's family is getting ready for his wedding.

On the other hand, Roshni (Aditi Sharma), a tawaif's daughter who possesses angelic traits, is introduced to us.

She too had a shadowy past because Aman's father, for unknown reasons, abandoned her as a newborn infant in the river, where she was later discovered and nurtured by a tawaif. The dream of Roshni is to start her own bakery.

Aman and Roshni eventually cross paths at a dargah where they had both come to pray for the upcoming New Moon ceremony. We observe that Jinn tries to approach Aman so that he might give him evil abilities, but Roshni intervenes and protects him. Jinn later destroys the dargah, and Aman uses his pet baazigar (a magical wand that can transform into a pet) to cast the spell "Kiya Mifa," which causes time to stop instantly.

What is the secret of Jinn and his relationship to Aman? The focus of the novel is on how he will compete with the Jinn and what part Roshni would play in his life.

Although Aman Junaid Khan and Roshni Ahmad are diametrically opposed people, fate and magic have brought them together in the most remarkable way.

It's enjoyable to watch Vikram Singh Chauhan as Aman Junaid Khan. In character, he has a flashy and attractive appearance. In the part of Roshni, Aditi Sharma is a wise pick. Her face naturally exudes simplicity and purity. We appreciate the magnetic on-screen duo of Vikram and Aditi.

The centrepiece of the show is the incredibly melodic and upbeat title song. Other background music is neither exceptionally outstanding nor too annoying. Sanjeev Srivastava and Divy Nidhi Sharma wrote the music for the soundtrack. Pamela Jain and Bhaven Dhanak perform the show's theme song, "Kahani Hamari Fasana Hamara." The narration, though, could have been more effective. Excellent spectacular effects and set design.



The narrative flow, which is neither too slow nor too rapid, seems to be robust and is arousing our curiosity. The idea behind Jinn is a first for Hindi television, and provided the script is kept clear and concise, the programme will undoubtedly become a fan favourite right away.

Gul Khan certainly has a knack for uncovering unique yet captivating tales. Yeh Jaadu Hai Jinn Ka appears to be an original story, much as how her programme Nazar set trends. This could be a great change for you if you enjoy supernatural fantasy dramas and are tired of naagins and chudails.

14.3 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Note: 1) Use the space below for your answers.

2) Compare your answers with those given at the end of this lesson.

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION.

1. What is review ?

- a) Re-examining
- b) Research
- c) Faster than criticism
- d) Equal to criticism

2. What is the difference between review and criticism?

- a) Review is faster, criticism is slower
- b) Review is slower, criticism is faster
- c) News analysis is faster
- d) Review is written by generalist, criticism by specialist.
- e) Review is chronologically written, while criticism is written in accordance with news value

3. What is a book review ?

- a) News about the book
- b) Plot summary of the book
- c) Feature on book
- d) None of the above.

4. Why is a book reviewed ?



- a) For its publicity
- b) To help readers know about ins and outs of the book.
- c) To promote sells
- d) None of the above.

5. What is film review?

- a) News about the film.
- b) Make viewers aware of ins and outs of film.
- c) Review the producer.
- d) Review the director.

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS:

6. A book reviewer as to what the book is about.
7. The reviewer must look into the facts whether it is up to the of the readers.
8. The reviewer must whether I there is anything new, innovative or creative in the book .
9. The fundamental principle of writing is also to the review-writing.
10. A film is a rare combination of beauty and and a rare observation of man and manner.

13.4 SUMMARY

A review is basically to view again, re-examining or re-considering of something judiciously in order to resolve upon if changes are required. It is looking back at something to check, re-check, multi-check, remember or be clear about something. It is to take a retrospective view of the past. A review is designed to provide a valuable, solid, informative, critical summary of a well defined subject. A review is to generally make the audience aware of the ins and outs of the subject from thematic, technical and production point of view and also what are the limitations of that subject.

A book review ,on the other hand, is a brief plot summary of the book. A book review evaluates the book and offer a gentle recommendation to the readers. It may be primary source, opinion piece, summary review or scholarly review. Reviewing a book is an art and craft. It is a matter of practice.



Constant and continuous reviewing practice leads to more perfection. It goes on improving through trial and error method and gets a professional touch after a prolonged effort.

Moreover, a film review is usually to make the viewers aware of the ins and outs of the film from thematic, technical and production point of view and also what are the limitations of the film. Reviewing a film is a highly creative and innovative job. It is very easy to view a film, but very difficult to review it. A film is a rare combination of beauty and brain and a rare observation of man and manner. It is a harmonious synchronization of a variety of components put in a reasonable, logical and judicious manner. Further, television programme review does not help the viewers know about the programmes well in advance and decide about watching it, because it is published after the programme is already broadcast. A television review is usually to make the viewers aware of the ins and outs of the television programme or serial from thematic, technical and production point of view and also what are the limitations of the film.

14.5 KEYWORDS

Review: It is basically to view again, re-examining or re-considering of something judiciously in order to resolve upon if changes are required. It is looking back at something to check, re-check, multi-check, remember or be clear about something. It is to take a retrospective view of the past. A review is designed to provide a valuable, solid, informative, critical summary of a well defined subject. A review is to generally make the audience aware of the ins and outs of the subject from thematic, technical and production point of view and also what are the limitations of that subject.

Book Review: It is a brief plot summary of the book. A book review evaluates the book and offer a gentle recommendation to the readers. It may be primary source, opinion piece, summary review or scholarly review. Reviewing a book is an art and craft. It is a matter of practice. Constant and continuous reviewing practice leads to more perfection. It goes on improving through trial and error method and gets a professional touch after a prolonged effort.

Film Review: A film review is usually to make the viewers aware of the ins and outs of the film from thematic, technical and production point of view and also what are the limitations of the film.



Reviewing a film is a highly creative and innovative job. It is very easy to view a film, but very difficult to review it. A film is a rare combination of beauty and brain and a rare observation of man and manner. It is a harmonious synchronization of a variety of components put in a reasonable, logical and judicious manner.

TV Programme Review: television programme review does not help the viewers know about the programmes well in advance and decide about watching it, because it is published after the programme is already broadcast. A television review is usually to make the viewers aware of the ins and outs of the television programme or serial from thematic, technical and production point of view and also what are the limitations of the film.

14.6 SELF-ASSESSMENT TEST

1. What is review? How is it written?
2. What is book review? Discuss its new trends.
3. What is film review? How is a film reviewed? Explain.
4. What is TV Programme Review? How is it written?
5. What are the pre-cautionary measures for a good review writing?
6. Differentiate between book review and film review?
7. What are steps for reviewing a film of this modern era?
8. Describe the purpose of a book review.
9. In what way a film review helps the viewers know about the ins and outs of a film? Explain.
10. Describe the new trends of a TV Programme review with suitable examples.

14.7 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION:

1. (a) Re-examining
2. (b) Review is written by generalist, criticism written by specialist.
3. (b) Plot summary of the book.
4. (b) To help readers know about ins and outs of the book.



5. (b) Make viewers aware of ins and outs of the film.

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS:

1. Highlight
2. Expectation
3. Find out
4. Applicable
5. Brain.

14.8 REFERENCES/SUGGESTED READINGS

1. Kamath,M.V. (1990) - "Professional Journalism" published by Vikas Publishing House Private Limited, New Delhi.
2. Shrivastav, K.M(1999)-"News Reporting and Editing" published by Sterling Publishing Private Limited, New Delhi.
3. Stovall,James Glen(2006)-"Writing for the Mass Media"6thedition,published by Pearson Education Inc. and Dorling Kindersley Publishing Inc.
4. Tewari,Arjun(1994)—“Jansancharaur Hindi Patrakarita” published by JaibhartiPrakashan,Allahabad.
5. "Media Problems and Prospects (1983)" published by National Media Centre.
6. Rayudu, C.S. (1993) - "Media and Communication Management" published by Himalaya Published House, New Delhi.
7. COMMUNICATOR (VOL. XXXXI, NO. 28, APRIL - JUNE 1996) published by the Indian Institute of Mass Communication, New Delhi.

(Related and Suggested Websites retrieved on 25th September, 2022)

1. <https://en.unesco.org/investigativejournalism>
2. <https://pediaa.com/difference-between-critique-and-review/>



3. <https://researchguides.uvm.edu/c.php?g=953842&p=6891494https://egyankosh.ac.in/bitstream/123456789/7291/1/Unit-2.pdf>
4. https://www.safetyreporting.hhs.gov/SPR2/en/FPSRHelp/safety_reporting/submit_a_follow-up_report.htm
5. <https://egyankosh.ac.in/bitstream/123456789/7498/1/Unit-5.pdf>
6. <https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/abs/10.1080/1461670X.2018.1467783?journalCode=rjos20>
7. <https://www.studocu.com/in/document/aligarh-muslim-university/mass-communication/types-of-reporting-lecture-notes-9/22272678>
8. <https://www.google.com/search?q=what+is+news&rlz>
9. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Concept+of+news&rlz>
10. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Definitions+of+news&rlz>



SUBJECT: REPORTING	
COURSE CODE: MSM-523 A	AUTHOR: DR MANOJ DAYAL
LESSON NO.: 15	
REVIEW & CRITICISM: II	

STRUCTURE

15.0 Learning Objectives

15.1 Introduction

15.2 Review and Criticism

 15.2.1 Theatre Review

 15.2.2 How to write a Theatre Review?

 15.2.3 Example of Theatre Review

 15.2.4 Art Review

 15.2.5 How to write an Art Review?

 15.2.6 Example of Art Review

 15.2.7 Exhibition Review

 15.2.8 How to write an Exhibition Review

 15.2.9 Example of Exhibition Review

15.3 Check Your Progress

15.4 Summary

15.5 Keywords

15.6 Self-Assessment Test

15.7 Answer to Check Your Progress

15.8 References/Suggested Readings

15.0 LEARNING OBJECTIVES



The lesson structure shall be as follows:

- Understand Review and Criticism
- Know about Theatre Review
- Learn how to review a theatre
- Comprehend the example of Theatre Review
- Describe Art Review
- Explain how to review an Art
- Comprehend the example of Art Review
- Discuss Exhibition Review
- Learn how to review an Exhibition
- Comprehend the example of Exhibition Review

15.1 INTRODUCTION

Review is a creative piece of write up with a lot of judicious re-examination. It requires a lot of cross-checking and multi-checking. Sometimes, it is retrospective and regressive in nature. When it comes to theatre, art and exhibition review, it is more than something creative and innovative. In this lesson, we will comprehensively talk about theatre review, its method, art review, its modus operandi, exhibition review, its approach to review with suitable examples.

15.2 REVIEW AND CRITICISM

As discussed earlier that a review is an evaluation and assessment of the subject concerned. It can be written by a generalist who is keenly interested in the theme. But a criticism is written only by the expert of the theme. Both review and criticism are synonymously and interchangeably used. But the hairline difference between these two does exist.

As explained that the former is written by the generalist and the latter is written by the expert. Therefore criticism or critique is considered to be more reliable and authentic than the review.

As far as theatre, art and exhibition are concerned, such criticisms are comprehensive analysis, minute study and meticulous evaluation of theatre, art and exhibition. A criticism can be theoretical and



technical assessment also whereas a review is only a superficial depiction and interpretation. Sometimes, even a generalist audience finds it difficult to comprehend the criticism written by the expert while such audience can easily understand the review of a theatre, art or exhibition, since it analyses, describes and evaluates a work of such nature. For example, if a reviewer narrates a theatre, then he will describe who created the theatre, who were the actors, where was the theatre performed, what genre was it, what was the theme of the theatre, etc. So is the case with art and exhibition also.

15.2.1 THEATRE REVIEW

It is a comprehensive analysis, assessment, examination and evaluation of a performance. It reflects the reviewers viewpoint or recommendation about a work. An academic review is based on investigation and research supported with data, facts and information. Some of the famous theatre review journals are *"Asian Theatre Journal"*, *"Canadian Theatre Review"*, *"Contemporary Theatre Review"*, *"Latin American Theatre Review"*, *"Theatre Journal"*, and *"Theatre Record."*

15.2.2 HOW TO WRITE A THEATRE REVIEW

This is a little complicated, complex and cumbersome task. This is because the reviewer watches it only once and then compile his analysis, assessment and evaluation from his memory. It is there desirable to read the theatre and also do some advanced research before watching it. However, it should not be overdone or over exercised else it gets an influence of other people's experience. Hence, we should look into some important facts like:

What the theatre is about? Who is putting up the show? What has been the past performance of this production company? How is the director? What has been the past reputation of the director? Who are the producers and actors? What kind of theatre is it?

These emerging issues will contextualize the body of the review.

Third, no doubt the reviewer should read the theatre will in advance. But must attend and watch the show sincerely and meticulously. Keep an open mind while watching and develop an amalgamated visualisation of text and show.



Fourth, you must remember that you cannot replay it like a film. In order to better recall the details and your thoughts, take down notes to the extent it is possible. This will help you write a good theatre review.

At the end write everything and proof read. Consider the various elements like script, style of performance, actors, actresses, acting, lighting, sound, costume design and set design. Best to focus on only those elements which are most relevant to your purpose of review. Also mention about the success or failure of the production's execution. Reason it out. And never forget to mention whether the production was worth seeing. And finally you should have some fun with review.

15.2.3 EXAMPLE OF THEATRE REVIEW

By Purvaja Sawant

(Colorblind is a Play directed by Manav Kaul, 90 minute time frame, Cast includes Satyajit Sharma, Kalki Koechlin, and others. French, English, and Bengali)

Rabindranath Tagore, the man who influenced our nation's literature and music, is the subject of the drama Colour Blind, which seeks to rediscover him via his life and works. This drama succeeds in this area because it gives the audience a glimpse of what the true man behind this façade must have been like, even though the life of this prolific man cannot be condensed into a few hours and portrayed on stage. He has always come across as a serene, collected, and intelligent individual. But was Tagore an isolated youngster? Did he become vulnerable when he fell in love? It aims to address all of these frequently asked topics as well as others.

As she writes each chapter of her research paper on Tagore, a woman (Kalki Koechlin) phones a Tagore specialist (Satyajit Sharma) to get his assessment of her work. Anecdotes from the research are used as scenes in the play, and this constitutes its foundation. As the narrative shifts between the present and the past, there is a continuous jump in the timelines.



In a dual character, Sharma also plays Tagore, while Koechlin portrays Victoria Ocampo, a scholar and writer from Argentina who was close with Tagore. The plays depict their two months spent together at a resort and their interactions.

Numerous intriguing points are made, including how young Tagore composed stories to cope with his personal struggles—almost as a defence mechanism. Throughout the play, Tagore jokes around with death and always manages to get away from it. This play is poetry rather than a biographical, like Tagore and his writings.

There is something musical about the way Tagore comes to life on stage, despite the chaos and flashes from the past. It could be challenging to understand the Bengali and French portions. However, once you get past it, you'll like the connection between Koechlin and Sharma as the major actors.

15.2.4 ART REVIEW

This is an analysis and assessment of art. It is very easy to view an art but very challenging to review it even for those who are extremely insightful viewers. The purpose of art review is not only to explore the art and depict it, but also to raise the sell of that artistic work. The review helps to look into a new facet of the artist's skill. It assesses its expositions and open an innovative light on what has already been done and what is to be done to make it more popular to gain more well-wishers and admirers. An art review is usually to make the viewers aware of the ins and outs of the art from thematic, technical and production point of view and also what are the limitations of the film. Reviewing an art is a highly creative and innovative job. It is very easy to view an art, but very difficult to review it. An art is a rare combination of beauty and brain and a rare observation of man and manner. It is a harmonious synchronization of a variety of components put in a reasonable, logical and judicious manner.

15.2.5 HOW TO WRITE AN ART REVIEW

The reviewer has to note down what the art is about? Who has created that art? Who has directed or guided? What has been the status of the director? What are the striking points of the art, its merits, demerits etc. What are the scholastic aspects of the art? On the same line, the critic will look into its



technical aspects and theoretical perspectives. The review must recommend the art to its audience whether to buy them or watch them or not to waste the time.

15.2.6 EXAMPLE OF ART REVIEW

By Renee-Phillips

Francesca Marta Volchitza's work has been compared to a stylized potpourri of inspirational visual poetry and narratives. Her colourful symbolic works arouse emotions of sensuality, love, unity, hope, fertility, and eternity. In one sequence, an elegant and continuous undulating design envelops naked male and female figures as they hug. In some works of art, people dance amid a merry rhythmic display of plant and fauna, illuminating our symbiotic relationship with the natural world.

Francesca's masterful use of colour, a variety of striking tactile materials, and keen spatial awareness give her masterfully choreographed pieces more depth and breadth. Fantasy and reality's stimulating components coexist in perfect harmony and balance.

Although Francesca's lyrical approach initially appears to be reminiscent of Symbolism, she develops her own contemporary artistic lexicon infused with metaphors that are uplifting and life-affirming.

15.2.7 EXHIBITION REVIEW

It is a specific kind of overview which enlightens the audience who has not seen it and helps them to decide whether to visit the exhibition or not. It also helps the audience to document and critique the activities of a city's art world. Such review is an important way of creating active critical analysis, comprehensive discussion, and also of building tomorrow's art history.

Exhibition review is an important source of researching emerging artists who are not yet represented in scholarly literature and established artists with a view to gaining insight into the reception of their work over time.

A good exhibition review is supposed to make the audience aware of an exhibition and its aims and assess the exhibition and the work on the display. Subsequently, the audience should get the answers of



two important questions, i.e., what should they expect when they visit the exhibition and should they visit the exhibition for their knowledge enrichment and entertainment expansion.

The reviewer must highlight as to where is the exhibition? Is it in a museum or a gallery or as some other alternative places? It must highlight whether that was a solo show or a group show? Why the museum or the commercial gallery did chose to organize that exhibition? Ultimately such review should deepen the audience understanding of art history or enhance the audience's experience of works of art or both.

15.2.8 HOW TO WRITE AN EXHIBITION REVIEW?

To write an exhibition review is an art and craft. It is an artistic and creative experience which helps the reviewer express his ideas about an artist's work. The review should provide a comprehensive description, detailed discussion and critical analysis of an art exhibit.

The reviewer must visit the exhibition with full time in hand to write an effective exhibition review. He must note down the details of the surroundings and informally interview the artist, a docent or curator as far as it is possible.

Thereafter, the reviewer should depict his meticulous observations and minute opinions in the review and must check, cross check and multi-check his creation before finalising. As a matter of fact, it should be creatively artistic and artistically creative.

The reviewer must keep the conceptual clarity in his write-up. Again there should be felicity in expression with crystal clear language. The reviewer should be to the point avoid beating about the bush. At the same time, there should be a desirable flow in expression and sequence in presentation. The reviewer must provide factual data, charts and diagrams to help the audience accept and rely on the write-up. The reviewer must exemplify time and again to convince the audience. The review must carry completeness in the entire message, specially from the conceptual point of view. And at the end, the reviewer must raise a few valid questions to himself as to why the works of art are arranged or ordered that way. He should take care whether a particular work stand out from the rest. Again he must inquire and express whether there was a theme or a subtext to the exhibition. The review must highlight as to



what was unique and striking points of the exhibition which makes it quite different from the other exhibitions. Finally, check out whether 5 Ws and one H are there or not in the review writes up. This will definitely provide the audience with a general overview of the entire exhibition with a sense of completeness.

15.2.9 EXAMPLE OF EXHIBITION REVIEW

By Olivia Crough

(William Henry Fox Talbot: At the Origins of Photography

Pushkin State Museum of Fine Arts, Moscow, Russia, February 6–April 8, 2018)

The history of "photogenic drawing" is described by British inventor William Henry Fox Talbot in the preface to his book *The Pencil of Nature* (1844). He used a camera lucida while on his honeymoon to try and draw Lake Como. However, his "faithless pencil" only left behind faint traces of the landscape that was bent; the traces were "melancholy to behold." Talbot made the decision to correct nature's fantastical depictions as if correcting Pliny's story about how art first emerged from the tracing of a lover's shadow. He received a patent for the calotype in 1841, the first chemical photography process that used paper. The calotype method produced a paper negative from which positive copies (salted paper prints) could be contact printed, unlike its well-known French rival, the metal-based daguerreotype. As a result, it served as the basis for photography using film.

The panoramic diptych from *The Reading Establishment*, the first commercial photographic printing business, was a standout in the exhibition (cat. 23, 24). Nine men pose for standing wood box cameras while working in the open. A lithograph of Anthony van Dyck's *Portrait of Cornelis van der Geest* (1620), a seated person, and a plaster replica of Canova's *The Three Graces* are among the subjects featured in the tableau vivant (1814–17). The comparison of male portraiture with the popular Neo classical ideal of female beauty, as well as the commercialised copying of Italian sculptures for export, demonstrates how photography supported the survival of the dominant aesthetic regimes in Western Europe.



The exhibition's emphasis on a single decade of Talbot's work forced the exclusion of a significant portion of Talbot's scientific investigation and photogravure experiments. His "photomicrographs" may have been displayed with the remarkable algal cyanotype contact prints by English botanist Anna Atkins, which are mentioned in the catalogue essay by Averyanova (17). Atkins was in touch with Talbot, and her independently published book *Photographs of British Algae: Cyanotype Impressions* (1843) was the first book with photographic illustrations and came out one year before *The Pencil of Nature*. Future exhibitions could better explore photography's social and historical context, epistemological repercussions (the rise of "objectivity"), and, in the words of Walter Benjamin, the profound challenges the medium posed to the art object by placing less emphasis on Talbot's singular polymathic ingenuity and the picturesque composition of the images.

15.3 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Note: 1) Use the space below for your answers.

2) Compare your answers with those given at the end of this lesson.

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION.

1. What is review?

- a) Re-examining
- b) Research
- c) Faster than criticism
- d) Equal to criticism

2. What is the difference between review and criticism?

- a) Review is faster, criticism is slower
- b) Review is slower, criticism is faster
- c) News analysis is faster
- d) Review is written by generalist, criticism by specialist.
- e) Review is chronologically written, while criticism is written in accordance with news value

3. What is a theatre review?

- a) News about the theatre
- b) Comprehensive analysis of theatre performance



- c) Feature on theatre
- d) None of the above.

4. Why is a theatre reviewed?

- a) For its publicity
- b) To help viewers know about ins and outs of the theatre.
- c) To promote sells
- d) None of the above.

5. What is art review?

- a) News about the film.
- b) Make viewers aware of ins and outs of art.
- c) Review the producer.
- d) Review the director.

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS

11. Review is basically to view again,..... or re-considering of something judiciously
12. A theatre reviewer..... as to what the theatre is about.
13. The reviewer must look into the facts whether it is up to the..... of the readers.
14. The reviewer must..... whether there is anything new, innovative or creative in the book.
15. The fundamental principle of writing is also..... to the review-writing.

15.4 SUMMARY

Review is basically to view again, re-examining or re-considering of something judiciously in order to resolve upon if changes are required. It is looking back at something to check, re-check multi-check, remember or be clear about something. It is to take a retrospective view of the past. A review is designed to provide a valuable, solid, informative, critical summary of a well-defined subject. A review is to generally make the audience aware of the ins and outs of the subject from thematic, technical and production point of view and also what are the limitations of that subject.



Theatre Review, on the other, is a comprehensive analysis, assessment, examination and evaluation of a performance. It reflects the reviewer's viewpoint or recommendation about a work. An academic review is based on investigation and research supported with data, facts and information.

Moreover, an art review is an analysis and assessment of art. It is very easy to view an art but very challenging to review it even for those who are extremely insightful viewers. The purpose of art review is not only to explore the art and depict it, but also to raise the sell of that artistic work. The review helps to look into a new facet of the artist's skill. It assesses its expositions and open an innovative light on what has already been done and what is to be done to make it more popular to gain more well-wishers and admirers. An art review is usually to make the viewers aware of the ins and outs of the art from thematic, technical and production point of view and also what are the limitations of the film. Reviewing an art is a highly creative and innovative job. It is very easy to view an art, but very difficult to review it. An art is a rare combination of beauty and brain and a rare observation of man and manner. It is a harmonious synchronization of a variety of components put in a reasonable, logical and judicious manner.

Further, an exhibition Review is a specific kind of overview which enlightens the audience who has not seen it and helps them to decide whether to visit the exhibition or not. It also helps the audience to document and critique the activities of a city's art world. Such review is an important way of creating active critical analysis and comprehensive discussion, and also of building tomorrow's art history.

15.5 KEYWORDS

Review: It is basically to view again, re-examining or re-considering of something judiciously in order to resolve upon if changes are required. It is looking back at something to check, re-check, multi-check, remember or be clear about something. It is to take a retrospective view of the past. A review is designed to provide a valuable, solid, informative, critical summary of a well-defined subject. A review is to generally make the audience aware of the ins and outs of the subject from thematic, technical and production point of view and also what are the limitations of that subject.



Theatre Review: It is a comprehensive analysis, assessment, examination and evaluation of a performance. It reflects the reviewers viewpoint or recommendation about a work. An academic review is based on investigation and research supported with data, facts and information.

Art Review: This is an analysis and assessment of art. It is very easy to view an art but very challenging to review it even for those who are extremely insightful viewers. The purpose of art review is not only to explore the art and depict it, but also to raise the sell of that artistic work. The review helps to look into a new facet of the artist's skill. It assesses its expositions and open an innovative light on what has already been done and what is to be done to make it more popular to gain more well-wishers and admirers. An art review is usually to make the viewers aware of the ins and outs of the art from thematic, technical and production point of view and also what are the limitations of the film. Reviewing an art is a highly creative and innovative job. It is very easy to view an art, but very difficult to review it. An art is a rare combination of beauty and brain and a rare observation of man and manner. It is a harmonious synchronization of a variety of components put in a reasonable, logical and judicious manner.

Exhibition Review: : It is a specific kind of overview which enlightens the audience who has not seen it and helps them to decide whether to visit the exhibition or not. It also helps the audience to document and critique the activities of a city's art world. Such review is an important way of creating active critical analysis and comprehensive discussion, and also of building tomorrow's art history.

15.6 SELF-ASSESSMENT TEST

1. What is review? How is it written?
2. What is theatre review? Discuss its new trends.
3. What is art review? How is an art reviewed? Explain.
4. What is Exhibition Review? How is it written?
5. What are the pre-cautionary measures for good review writing?
6. Differentiate between theatre review and art review?
7. What are steps for reviewing a theatre of this modern era?
8. Describe the purpose of a theatre review.



-
9. In what way an art review helps the viewers know about the ins and outs of an art? Explain.
 10. Describe the new trends of a exhibition review with suitable examples.
-

15.7 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION

1. (a) Re-examining
2. (d) Review is written by generalist, criticism written by specialist.
3. (b) Comprehensive analysis of theatre performance.
4. (b) To help viewers know about ins and outs of the theatre.
5. (b) Make viewers aware of ins and outs of the art.

B. FILL IN THE BLANKS

1. Re-examining
2. Explores
3. Expectation
4. Find out
5. Applicable

15.8 REFERENCES/SUGGESTED READINGS

1. Kamath,M.V. (1990) - "Professional Journalism" published by Vikas Publishing House Private Limited, New Delhi.
2. Shrivastav, K.M(1999)-"News Reporting and Editing" published by Sterling Publishing Private Limited, New Delhi.
3. Stovall,James Glen(2006)-"Writing for the Mass Media"6th edition,published by Pearson Education Inc. and Dorling Kindersley Publishing Inc.
4. Tewari,Arjun(1994)—“Jansancharaur Hindi Patrakarita” published by JaibhartiPrakashan,Allahabad.
5. "Media Problems and Prospects (1983)" published by National Media Centre.



-
6. Rayudu, C.S. (1993) - "Media and Communication Management" published by Himalaya Published House, New Delhi.
 7. COMMUNICATOR (VOL. XXXXI, NO. 28, APRIL - JUNE 1996) published by the Indian Institute of Mass Communication, New Delhi.

(Related and Suggested Websites retrieved on 25th September, 2022)

1. <https://en.unesco.org/investigativejournalism>
2. <https://pediaa.com/difference-between-critique-and-review/>
3. <https://m.timesofindia.com/entertainment/hindi/theatre/theatre-review-colour-blind/articleshow/29951975.cms>
4. <http://caareviews.org/reviews/3447#.YwwnrLfhWDb>
5. <https://reneephillips.com/writing-services-artists/writing-samples/>
6. <https://researchguides.uvm.edu/c.php?g=953842&p=6891494https://egyankosh.ac.in/bitstream/123456789/7291/1/Unit-2.pdf>
7. https://www.safetyreporting.hhs.gov/SRP2/en/FPSRHelp/safety_reporting/submit_a_follow-up_report.htm
8. <https://egyankosh.ac.in/bitstream/123456789/7498/1/Unit-5.pdf>
9. <https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/abs/10.1080/1461670X.2018.1467783?journalCode=rjos20>
10. <https://www.studocu.com/in/document/aligarh-muslim-university/mass-communication/types-of-reporting-lecture-notes-9/22272678>
11. <https://www.google.com/search?q=what+is+news&rlz>
12. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Concept+of+news&rlz>
13. <https://www.google.com/search?q=Definitions+of+news&rlz>



SUBJECT: REPORTING	
COURSE CODE: MSM-523 A	AUTHOR: DR. RAMESH KUMAR SHARMA
LESSON NO.: 16	VETTER: DR MANOJ DAYAL
PARTICIPATORY JOURNALISM	

STRUCTURE

- 16.0 Learning Objectives
- 16.1 Introduction
- 16.2 Participatory Journalism
 - 16.2.1 Categories of Participatory Journalism
 - 16.2.2 Citizen Journalism
- 16.3 Media Activism
 - 16.3.1 Activism through Hashtag
 - 16.3.2 Social Responsibility and Media Ethics
- 16.4 Trial by Media
 - 16.4.1 Trial by Media, Is it fair?
- 16.5 Investigative Journalism
 - 16.5.1 Sting operations
- 16.6 Check Your Progress
- 16.7 Summary
- 16.8 Keywords
- 16.9 Self-Assessment Test
- 16.10 Answers to Check Your Progress
- 16.11 References/ Suggested Readings

16.0 LEARNING OBJECTIVES



After going through this lesson, you will be able to:

- Know about Participatory Journalism & Citizens' Journalism
- Understand the meaning & concept of Media Activism
- Explain the concept of Trial by Media
- Explore Investigative Journalism & Sting operations

16.1 INTRODUCTION

Participatory journalism is a very fast emerging trend and recent phenomenon in which those at the receiving ends have started partaking in the process of journalism. Everyone knows what viewers and listeners participation means, but can that be rendered into journalism. That is a big question.

Can blogging be termed as journalism? No, it cannot be. Individual bloggers cannot be called journalists. They are not trained into journalism or to perform as trained professionals. Bloggers are not journalists because no editor comes between the writer and reader. The role of a journalist is much bigger and that of a responsibility. The processing of an information and newsroom editing function really is the aspect that makes it journalism.

This topic certainly draws much attention and deliberation. Part of the predicament in the is-it-or-isn't-it-journalism argument crops up from the comparatively development of common people publishing online — many of them trying to inform people with their broadcast of information.

A first-hand information or eye witnesses' account can be created, but this cannot be called journalism or an unprejudiced and even handed presentation of information. A novice or untrained person can pretend or act as an informer, but, can never be a journalist.

Here examples can also be cited of other professions where qualified professionals like chartered accountant, doctors, engineers or advocates can be replaced with any untrained or greenhorn individual.

16.2 PARTICIPATORY JOURNALISM



When small independent publications and collaborative news sites with amateur staffs perform primary reporting on community affairs, in order to perform journalism, it can be termed as participatory journalism.

When general public start contributing photos, video and news updates to mainstream news outlets, in order to be contributors and toward pretending to be journalists doing participatory journalism.

But when bloggers comment on link to news stories, can it be termed as journalism? As a rule, it is not journalism. However, when the blogger puts in individual comments that rely on unusual research, or if it is done by someone considered an expert on the subject, it can be considered as their opinionated pieces.

When a blogger conducts a phone interview with an interesting subject and posts it to his Weblog — or does some research to turn up the address, phone number and e-mail of an alleged rape victim, as a number of bloggers have been doing. They themselves have been considering as acts of journalism. However, it is no journalism at all. In the school of journalism, first thing that is being taught is to protect victim's identity. It is in the welfare of the system and towards processing of criminal justice and protection of women rights.

Similar questions are being raised when news organizations open up the channels of interactivity with their audiences. Voting in an online poll surely isn't journalism, but giving a first-hand report of one's account in some matter of incidents and happenings in places where other media sources are not there. But, then that too requires knowledge of the subject matter and a method of presenting it. But, that too has to be handled in professional way by a qualified and trained professional.

Whatever the standard and criterion one uses — a precise definition says that journalism must entail original reporting and an editorial filter and sanity. Some possibility is there only for kinds of pieces like travelogues, op-ed commentary and analysis journalism. In the current times, it is being observed that the audience participation in the news equation is on the upswing with the advent of Internet and technological gadgets. Different forms of audience participation has become prevalent as mobile devices with video streaming with transmission of text, photos and video directly over the phone has



become commonplace. Mobile Journalism (MoJo) has acquired a big concept behind this. Then, once again, that too requires proper training and qualification.

16.1.1 CATEGORIES OF PARTICIPATORY JOURNALISM

Participatory journalism concepts generally fall into these broad categories:

1. Audience participation at mainstream news outlets.

- Incorporation of readers comments, either through e-mails or direct postings on websites.
- Guest articles or articles by invitation on issues of concern by imminent writers and domain experts.
- Roundtable discussion or opinion pieces

2. Independent news and information web sites.

In small media houses, publications rely on talented amateurs or independent writers (due to inability to pay fulltime staff) to provide original interviews, research and reporting. In other cases, the some websites primarily generate editorial digests with varying degrees of commentary (news digest). Some of these sites do journalism only transiently, while for others citizen reporting is their fundamental purpose.

3. Out-and-out participatory news site

At such sites, citizen-reporters contribute a significant amount of material. In India as well as world over such news concepts have cropped up. Of late, in India, there are websites which offer first-person reporting of political news with a subjective slant.

4. Collaborative and contributory media sites.

There are sites: weblogs and dialogue boards, where users put in editorial content (some of which would be suitable for a newspaper or magazine too) as well as links to news stories and ratings. Other community sites with mechanisms for self-publishing, self-ranking and self-organisation include the shared newspaper, which can also be explained as multifarious online



community with a objective to write, publish and edit a quality database of information and other creative content.

5. Other kinds of 'skeletal media' and personal broadcasting sites

Some of the niche media focus on a particular can be categorised under this section. Most of these websites are for particular interest groups and are with a set agenda. There focus is more on their business aspects than doing public service of disseminating information, educating or entertaining.

With the fast-changing media landscapes, other examples of participatory journalism appear to be arising continually. While some of them are mentioned above intersect with each other. With the growing interactive medium, many things are in continuous progression. However, going by the versions of purists and veterans, all these are not true forms of journalism. Many of these do not qualify as journalism at all.

16.2.2 CITIZEN JOURNALISM

The concept of citizen journalism is based on general public playing an lively role in the process of collecting, reporting, analysing, and disseminating news and information.

Courtney C Radsch, an American journalist, defines citizen journalism as an alternative and activist form of news gathering and reporting that functions outside mainstream media institutions, often as a response to shortcomings in the professional journalistic field, that uses similar journalistic practices but is driven by different objectives and ideals and relies on alternative sources of legitimacy than traditional or mainstream journalism.

Jay Rosen, another popular blogger, put across the notion behind citizen journalism as that when people formerly known as the audience employ the press tools they have in their possession to inform one another. The underlying principle of citizen journalism is that ordinary people, not professional journalists, can be the main creators and distributors of news.



Citizen journalism should not be confused with: community journalism or civic journalism, as both of which are practiced by professional journalists; collaborative journalism as the practice of professional and amateur journalists working together. Social journalism which denotes a digital publication with a hybrid of professional and non-professional journalism.

Citizen journalism is a specific form of both public-based media and user generated content. By putting together the term 'citizen', with its attendant qualities of civic-mindedness and social responsibility, with that of 'journalism', which refers to a particular profession.

Courtney C Radsch insists that this term best describes this particular form of online and digital journalism conducted by amateurs, because it underscores the link between the practice of journalism and its relation to the political and public sphere. Citizen journalism became more prevalent by the development of various online internet platforms.

According to Vincent Campbell, theories of citizenship can be categorized into two core groups: those that consider journalism for citizenship, and those that consider journalism as citizenship.

The classical model of citizenship is the base of the two theories of citizenship. The classical model is rooted in the ideology of informed citizens and places emphasis on the role of journalists rather than on citizens.

Abraham Zapruder, who filmed the assassination of President John Fitzgerald Kennedy with a home-movie camera, is sometimes presented as an ancestor to citizen journalists. Egyptian citizen Wael Abbas was awarded several international reporting prizes for his blog Misr Digital (Digital Egypt) and a video he publicized of two policemen beating a bus driver helped lead to their conviction.

During 9/11 many eyewitness accounts of the terrorist attacks on the World Trade Center came from citizen journalists. Images and stories from citizen journalists close to the World Trade Center offered content that played a major role in the story.

Subsequent to the citizen journalism coverage of the disaster and aftermath, researchers have suggested that citizen journalists may, in fact, play a critical role in the disaster warning system itself, potentially



with higher reliability than the networks of tsunami warning equipment based on technology alone which then require interpretation by disinterested third parties.

16.3 MEDIA ACTIVISM

It is a concept of going beyond the actual role of just informing readers and the stakeholders to and going for a crusade on a particular issue. Media activism is a wide-ranging category of activism that makes use of media and communication technologies for social and political movements. Methods of media activism include bombarding the entire platform to publicise the matter. Using various platforms and publishing news on websites, creating video and audio investigations, spreading information about protests, or organising campaigns relating to media and communications policies.

It is used for various and varied purposes. It is frequently a instrument for grassroots activists and revolutionary people to proliferate information not accessible via mainstream media or to communicate concealed news stories. Precise forms of politically goaded narratives and digital campaigns are also deemed as media activism. Characteristically, the objective of media activism is to extend consciousness through media communiqué which now and then shows the way to action.

Social media has become a changeover agent for media activism. The way information are being proliferated and broadened through social media tools, today any issue get viral within few minutes of its being broadcasted. On account of being interactive platforms, any information gets propagated immediately and a support base is gathered.

Social media has also become a foremost categorizing contrivance for political and social developments worldwide. It functions in order to reinforce and brace up the prevailing set of connections of political and social associations among follower who are traditionally not on digital platform. In the current scenario, media activism can also be viewed in context with youth to conjoin as youths very swiftly remonstrate and generate online communities over certain explicit issues and social causes.

Civilization blocking, an additional form of media activism, is a ground-breaking strategy of remonstration that re-appropriates the tropes of mainstream media "in order to take benefit of the



wherewithal and settings they present ". Media activism has widen it extent to be included in areas of study of journalism, new media and digital platforms.

We also need to understand frameworks for the use of media in political movements. Researchers have attempted to create hypothetical frameworks to exemplify the use of media within social movements and activism. One example is the four-stage model for political movements using social media created by political scientists Rodrigo Sandoval-Almazan and J. Roman Gil-Garcia.

- Triggering event
- Media response
- Viral organization
- Physical response

Limitations of social media activism have also been pointed out by scholars. Some critics argue that media activism and internet activism still require the coverage of traditional mass media outlets in order to gain significant traction. Social movements, especially ones rooted in online social media, also require a critical mass of participants in order to sustain the presence on social media platforms. A study of the protests and media activism sparked by the 2009 Iranian presidential election also suggests that digital creations and media have to be emotionally moving in order to in order to spur civic engagement and mobilization of citizens.

16.3.1 ACTIVISM THROUGH HASHTAG

A hashtag is a word or keyword phrase preceded by a hash, also known as the pound sign (#). It's used within a post on social media to help those who may be interested in your topic to be able to find it when they search for a keyword or particular hashtag. It was first brought to Twitter on August 23, 2007 by Chris Messina. Before this, the hash (or pound) symbol had been used in various ways around the web, which helped Chris in developing his detailed suggestion for using hashtags on Twitter.

A hashtag is a label used on social media sites that makes it easier to find information with a theme or specific content. It encourage social media users to explore content that catches their eye. Interest groups can use hashtags to reach their target audience and to help stakeholders filter information. People



use the hashtag symbol (#) before a relevant keyword or phrase in their Tweet to categorize those Tweets and help them show more easily in Twitter search. Clicking or tapping on a hashtagged word in any message shows you other Tweets that include that hashtag. Hashtags can be included anywhere in a Tweet. It is a type of metadata tag used on social networks such as Twitter and other microblogging services. It lets users apply dynamic, user-generated tagging that helps other users easily find messages with a specific theme or content.

16.3.2 SOCIAL RESPONSIBILITY AND MEDIA ETHICS

Media has certain accountability and responsibility to the society. The Social Responsibility Theory of media necessitates the same concept into subsistence. This theory was initiated and propagated in the American system and the enterprise was taken in the late forties. Moreover, the Hutchison Commission on Freedom of the Press, formed during the World War II, provided a model in which the media has to act upon some precise responsibilities towards society like truth, accuracy, objectivity and balance.

Democracy in wide-ranging terms is implicit to be a form of government that is subject to popular sovereignty. It is fundamentally a control by the people that is in contrary to monarchies or aristocracies. One of the best parts of the democratic system is the freedom of expression and the breathing space that is bestowed upon different sections of the society. A democratic system can run to its utmost potential when there is wide participation on the part the general mass that is not possible without people getting informed about various issues. Reliable information sources are an important constituent of any democratic society. This is where the mass media steps in.

Media ethics upholds and endorses values such as a worldwide respect for life and the rule of law and legality. It classifies and doles out with righteous queries about how media should use content and other display materials to its audience. It is the finest division of applied ethics dealing with the definite ethical principles and standards of media, including broadcast media, film, theatre, the arts, print media and the internet. The field covers many varied and highly controversial topics, ranging from war journalism to lifestyle advertisement campaigns.



The ethics of journalism is one of the most distinct and precise branches of media ethics, principally because it is regularly taught in journalism and mass communication courses all over. Journalistic ethics be predisposed to govern media ethics, every now and then almost to the elimination of other areas. Some of the areas covered by journalism ethics comprise:

News Management: News can control and be controlled. Politicians, officials, and corporate houses tend to maneuver news media; governments, for example, by censorship, and corporate houses by funding and buying of shares. The ways of management and exploitation are devious and insinuating. Exploitation may be intentional or unwilling. Media houses and journalists being manipulated may be ignorant. This is also sometimes part of news propaganda.

Reality: Sometimes the reality and truth may conflict with many other values.

Public interest: Exposure of information related to defence and other sensitive government information may be different to the public interest, even if it is correct. However, public interest is not a term which is simple to characterize.

Confidentiality: Scandalous information of celebrities and public figures is a crucial subject matter in many media. Expose is not essentially acceptable merely for the reason that the information is correct. Privacy is also a right, and one which conflicts with free speech.

Flight of the imagination: Whims and fancies are constituent of amusement, which is a rightful objective of media content. Journalism may mix up imagination and reality, with resulting ethical quandaries

Flavour: Journalists who cover crime, disasters and wardeal with state of affairs which may upset the understanding of their spectators and readers. For example, human remains are rarely screened. The ethical issue is how far should one risk shocking an audience's sensitivities in order to correctly and fully report the truth.

Legalties: Journalistic ethics may conflict with the legal issues such as the fortification of classified news sources. There are also several issues where information obtained and acquired need to seen as not



been done by violation of law. Sting operations and investigative reporting may be obtained through trickery, deception, trespass and similar deceit and misdemeanour.

The advent of Internet has transformed and redefined various ethical and moral issues for both online journalists and journalists utilizing online resources. While some journalists continue to adhere to ethical principles of traditional journalism, many journalists believe that with the absence of a mutually agreed upon code of ethics specifically pertaining to internet ethics, and lack of literature dealing specifically with the ways in which the Internet impacts media ethics in journalism online, the online environment poses new threats to the profession.

Some of the core issues of media ethics in online journalism include commercial pressures, accuracy and credibility (which include the issues dealing with hyperlinks), verification of facts, regulation, privacy, and news-gathering methods.

Even though media activism is a form of activism it is not a form of high risk activism, more a form of organization through communication. Slacktivism is a term coined to give emphasis to the lack of action media activism enrolls, through engaging in the talk of social issues but not reacting. Detractors contend that media activism does not seem to be the most competent method in taking action towards social systems, on the other hand many be accustomed with it as a powerful tool of communication to hook up like-minded population.

16.4 TRIAL BY MEDIA

During high-publicity court cases, the media are often accused of provoking an atmosphere of public hysteria akin to a lynch mob which not only makes a fair trial nearly impossible but means that regardless of the result of the trial the accused will not be able to live the rest of their life without intense public scrutiny.

Although a recently coined phrase, the idea that popular media can have a strong influence on the legal process goes back certainly to the advent of the printing press and probably much further. This is not including the use of a state controlled press to criminalize political opponents, but in its commonly



understood meaning covers all occasions where the reputation of a person has been drastically affected by ostensibly non-political publications.

Often the coverage in the press can be said to reflect the views of the person in the street. However, more credibility is generally given to printed material than 'water cooler gossip'. The responsibility of the press to confirm reports and leaks about individuals being tried has come under increasing scrutiny and journalists are calling for higher standards. There was much debate over U.S President Bill Clinton's impeachment trial and prosecutor Kenneth Starr's investigation and how the media handled the trial by reporting commentary from lawyers which influenced public opinion.

In the United Kingdom, strict contempt of court regulations restrict the media's reporting of legal proceedings after a person is formally arrested. These rules are designed so that a defendant receives a fair trial in front of a jury that has not been tainted by prior media coverage. The newspapers the Daily Mirror and The Sun have been prosecuted under these regulations, although such prosecutions are rare.

For example, in 2015, JasleenKaur, a woman from Delhi, India, posted a photo of a man, Sarvjeet Singh, on Facebook and accused him of sexual harassment. The Facebook post went viral which was followed by a media trial labelling the man with terms like 'pervert' and 'the predator of Delhi'. Four years later, the man was held innocent by the Delhi court and was acquitted of all the charges. However, during the time, the man had lost his job and couldn't find any other source of income due to such media coverage.

Here's a nation, one of the founding pillars was freedom of speech and freedom of expression. And yet we have imposed upon people restrictions, on what they can say, on what they can think. And the media is the largest proponent of this, crucifying people who say things really quite innocently.-Benjamin Carson

Trial by media is a phrase popular in the late 20th century and 21st century to describe the impact of television and newspaper coverage on a person's reputation by creating a widespread perception of guilt or innocence before or after the verdict in a court of law.



Media has been the voice of thousands through which a platform is provided for the common man. In rapidly changing socio economic conditions like in India (largest democratic country) media has gained prominence and hence referred as a fourth pillar of democracy. Of course sometimes a drop of ink dropped down from the journalist's pen might be more powerful than a bullet from the soldier's gun. According to criminal jurisprudence a suspect/accused is entitled to a fair trial until proven guilty/innocent by the court of law.

The right of freedom of speech and expression is contained in article 19 of the constitution. However the freedom is not absolute as it is bound by the sub clause of the same article stating that the right of freedom of speech and expression does not embrace the freedom to commit contempt of court.

We live in a society in which spurious realities are manufactured by the media, by governments, by big corporations, by religious groups, political groups. I ask, in my writing, 'What is real?' Media is something which has to properly guide in this. In India trial by media has attained significant proportions. The media is the most powerful entity of earth. They have the power to make the innocent guilty and to make the guilty innocent and that's "POWER "to control the minds of masses. Over the past years the human entity has been connected so much to the media that even children today speak out through social media.

Some famous criminal cases that would have gone unpunished but for the intervention of media are PriyadarshiniMattoo case, Jessica Lal case, NitishKatara murder case etc.

Even in the recent case like AarushiTalwar's case the media has played a major role pointing towards her parents. Likewise it can change the whole way of perceiving. The concept of media trial is not new. There have been numerous instances in which media has been accused of conducting the trial of the accused and passing the 'verdict' even before the court passes its judgment. Trial is essentially a process to be carried out by the courts. It is essential by any judicial system that the accused should have a fair trial.

Media has almost reincarnated itself as the public court. It has been the voice of the people who can never be heard, the light to the people who can never see the reality and the guide to the judge affecting



the decisions. High-profile civil litigation is not just decided in the courts; it also is decided in the court of public opinion. The magnitude of the coverage and the filter through which the media reports on litigation can create a "clear bias in civil cases." A larger issue is the complex nature of juror bias and how that bias predisposes a juror toward one side in a case. It is no secret that we all have biases. The difficulty comes from understanding how those biases may ultimately affect the viewing of evidence and the deliberations in a case. Judges are also Human Beings they too care about the reputation and promotion and remunerations. Media is so much into our day to day life that even judges can't stay away from it. And as a result there is also an additional pressure on the judges which include trials of high publicity.

Media needs to act as a watchdog and show the society whatever is happening around and also needs to act as the platform for the voice of the society. But now a day's even media has been doing things for their salaries and TRP's. Hence it should be well regulated by the court to maintain the basic code of conduct.

Tell me, why is the media here so negative? Why are we in India so embarrassed to recognize our own strengths, our achievements? We are such a great nation. We have so many amazing success stories but we refuse to acknowledge them. Why? (As quoted by late Dr. A P J Abdul Kalam)

So media should be a missile used to bring a great change and a judge and a public weapon free of corruption

16.4.1 TRIAL BY MEDIA, IS IT FAIR?

India enjoys the largest democracy so does its media, which is infamous today for its role of a watchdog. Remembering 2006 baby prince in 60 feet deep trench or 2015 international yoga day, how all news stations switched to cover and telecast the same issue without a pass of breath as if media had a news deadlock. The media is actually a mix of some positive and negative aspects. Its media whether print or electronic that strings people who are geographically divided. Media incumbents fourth major pillar of the world's largest democracy hence, its freedom is the freedom of people as the mass population need to be well informed of the public matters .It would be no harm to say that media is 21st



century's indispensible expanding resource who is continually watching the functioning of all the tiers of this largest democratic system and provides a platform to get grievances of people noticed by the society and legislatures indiscriminately. It's therefore the effective tool today as it not only brings accountability and transparency in the system but also educates and guides the citizens in many respects. Though it invited scorn from various agencies for some of its thoughtless coverage but one must not forget the constructive role it played in exposing the 2g scam, the burning Vayapam scam, LalitModi fled and countless such opprobrious acts of corruption to the public. It was media who brought ArunaShuanbaugh into light who died after being in vegetative state for nearly four decades. Media facilitates awareness but is often found responsible for moulding and distorting the public opinion about the things which are under trial or in process or state of scrutiny. Though if properly channelized media can be used in enumerate ways to promote social harmony, combat terrorism, expose snaked scams, eradicate corruption, create awareness among masses and to achieve that Mr. Nehru envisaged a vision of free press. To experience freedom of media nations founding fathers realized its importance and hence included it in the constitution in the form of freedom of speech and expression as articulated in the constitution in Article 19(1) a .Thus Media was accorded with many freedoms and immunities so that this fourth pillar of democracy stands tall and strong. However the freedom of speech and expression is not absolute but is limited by scenarios given in sub clause (2) of the same article. The article says that nothing in the freedom of speech and expression shall affect the operation of any existing law, or prevent the State from making any law or public order, decency or morality in relation to contempt of court. But many a times media foretells the verdict before court passes its judgment thus engaging it in committing contempt of court, defaming the suspect by showcasing him a culprit. Today media is questioned for its transmigration into a 'public court' (JantaAdalat) and its interference into court proceedings. Here, I believe media identifies its responsibility and works cumulatively with court to bring truth to the world leaving no void for injustice. This is for what actually media is, it can serve as a great force in building the nation. Interference of media is justified as the largest democratic system working through its numerous departments is not less prone to corruption and wrongdoings taking advantage of that, culprits may come clean. Scribes conduct investigation into the crime and publish the accomplished results even before the court takes cognizance of the case only to aware the citizens of the goriest crimes and other happenings. Media trial and media investigation



brings public closer to the democracy and helps to build an opinion towards the accused. By this way, the accused is being judged indiscriminately. Though there is a fact to be accepted that sometimes not properly directed investigation, in some cases, results in encroachment of civil rights of accused leaving all his liberty unaddressed and presence defamed, maligned. Media understands the visible demarcation of duties and tasks that are meant to be performed by the legislative, judiciary, executive and media itself. Concluding on positive note that media trails can't be declared unjustified totally, it's there to look for facts and information that empowers citizens and strengthens democracy at the time when justice seems out of reach to a common citizen.

16.5 INVESTIGATIVE JOURNALISM

Investigative Journalism means the unveiling of matters that are concealed either deliberately by someone in a position of power, or accidentally, behind a chaotic mass of facts and circumstances - and the analysis and exposure of all relevant facts to the public. In this way investigative journalism crucially contributes to freedom of expression and media development, which are at the heart of UNESCO's mandate.

UNESCO has constantly fostered debate on media accountability and professional and ethical standards, which provide journalists with guiding principles and training materials on how to best exercise their profession. In collaboration with Arab Reporters for Investigative Journalism (ARIJ), UNESCO launched the first manual for investigative journalists in Arab States, entitled *Story-Based Inquiry: A Manual for Investigative Journalists* in 2009. Following the successful launch of the Manual which has been adopted by many journalism programmes in the Arab States, Asia, the United States of America and the Russian Federation, UNESCO presented *The Global Investigative Journalism Casebook*, as complementary material for training purposes.

The role media can play as a watchdog is indispensable for democracy and it is for this reason that UNESCO fully supports initiatives to strengthen the capacity building of investigative journalism throughout the world. At a time of a widening communications ecosystem, journalism today needs to clearly show its key value-add to the public interest. In this light, credible investigative stories, like the



kind promoted in this book, are increasingly pivotal to public confirmation of the continuing importance of professional journalistic work in the coming years

Investigative Journalism is a form of journalism in which reporters go in-depth to investigate a single story that may uncover corruption, review government policies or of corporate houses, or draw attention to social, economic, political or cultural trends. An investigative journalist, or team of journalists, may spend months or years researching a single topic. Unlike conventional reporting, where reporters rely on materials supplied by the government, NGOs and other agencies, investigative reporting depends on material gathered through the reporter's own initiative. The practice aims at exposing public matters that are otherwise concealed, either deliberately or accidentally.

Investigative journalism requires the reporter to dig deeply into an issue or topic of public interest. 'Public interest' refers to a quality whereby a community will be disadvantaged by not knowing this information, or will benefit (either materially or through informed decision-making) by knowing it. Sometimes, information that benefits one community may disadvantage another. For example, forest-dwellers can demand better prices if they know the market value of trees that logging companies want to fell. Of course, the logging industry does not want this information revealed, as tree prices will rise. An entire country need not be affected by the story and indeed, 'public interest' is often differentiated from 'national interest'. Latter term is sometimes used by governments to justify illegal, dangerous or unethical acts or to discourage journalists from reporting on a significant problem.

Investigative journalism is not instantaneous. It develops through recognised stages of planning, researching and reporting, and has to adhere to accepted standards of accuracy and evidence. The base of an investigative story is the proactive work of a journalist and, where resources permit, his or her team. After receiving a story tip, journalists develop hypotheses, plan additional research, decide on the relevant questions, and go out to investigate them. They must compile evidence by witnessing and analysing answers for themselves, such that they go far beyond simply verifying the tip. The final story should reveal new information or assemble previously available information in a new way to reveal its significance. A single source can provide fascinating revelations, access to insights and information that would otherwise be hidden. But until the story from that source is cross-checked against other sources –



experiential, documentary and human – and its meaning is explored, it does not classify as investigation.

Investigative reporting calls for greater resources, team work and more time than a routine news report. Many stories are the result of team investigations. But this poses problems for small, local and community publications with limited time, money, staff or specialised skills. A journalist may need to seek grants to support an investigation and learn to tap the skills of individuals outside the newsroom to help with specialist expertise.

16.5.1 STING OPERATION

“A Sting Operation is an operation designed to catch a person committing a crime by means of deception. A complicated confidence game planned and executed with great care. The word “sting” derives its origin from American usage to mean a police undercover operation designed to ensnare criminals.

The word “sting” is a synonym for the expression “set a trap to catch a crook” and this article uses the term in that sense.

In more refined terms, it can be called Investigative Journalism or Undercover Journalism”.

Sting Operation is an information-gathering exercise; it looks for facts that are not easy to obtain by simple requests and searches, or those that are actively being concealed, suppressed or distorted. An informed citizenry the bedrock of a democracy, holding the government accountable through voting and participation requires investigative journalism which cannot sustain itself on asymmetric dissemination of information.

Television news is an evolving medium and has definitely moved away from being just about straight news. With more than fifty news channels at our disposal, the competition seems to be sizzling. We are living in the times of Page 3 journalism, where sizzle sells and ‘breaking news’ at any cost seems to be the mantra to get an edge over the competition. Sting operations of different sorts seem to be on the agenda of many news channels.



In recent times, sting operation or any form of investigative journalism is drawn by the fact that news channels can have greater TRPs that is, an edge over other news channels in this age of channel wars.

16.6 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Note: 1) Use the space below for your answers.

2) Compare your answers with those given at the end of this lesson.

A. CHOOSE THE RIGHT OPTION.

- 1) What is citizen journalism?
 - a) Citizen journalism is the gathering and reporting of news by the public.
 - b) Citizen journalism is a rogue movement by the American people to eliminate the media.
 - c) Citizen journalism is a fake news style of reporting done by the public to show how the media is biased.
 - d) Citizen journalism is a social media network of people who used to be journalists but got fired.
- 2) What is a major disadvantage that citizen journalists have that traditional journalists do not?
 - a) Citizen journalists are always biased.
 - b) They do not have access to the crisis right away.
 - c) They do not have formal training in journalism, and therefore do not understand the ethics and laws that are important in the field.
 - d) They cannot call themselves journalists because they are not employed by a media outlet.
- 3) has become a changeover agent for media activism.
 - a) News Paper
 - b) Television
 - c) Radio
 - d) Social Media



-
- 4) Trial by media describe the impact of television and newspaper coverage on a by creating a widespread perception of guilt or innocence before or after the verdict in a court of law
- Person's reputation
 - Opinion
 - Organization
 - Party
- 5) What is investigative journalism?
- in-depth reporting that looks hard at one specific topic or subject
 - a format that reports on everyday topics such as neighborhood conflicts
 - a format that compares social news with political news
 - a type of journalism in which regular citizens do the reporting to local news channels

16.7 SUMMARY

- **Participatory Journalism:** Participatory journalism is also known as citizen journalism, street journalism or public media. It is performed by common people or citizens. "In participatory journalism citizens According to Shayne Bowman & Chris Willis "the intent of this citizen participation is to provide independent, reliable, accurate, wide-ranging and relevant information that a democracy requires."
- **Citizen Journalism:** Citizen journalism is a specific form of common people media as well as user generated content. The rapid advent of information communication systems (ICT) has induced the people to deal closely with the media. Especially, the fast development of internet based social media networks, provides a new concept all around the world; "amateur reporters". The newspapers organizations and the professional journalists, was not very satisfied with this "citizen journalism" concept previously. They side against the citizen journalists. But after some time they have realized that they can benefit from that news. Then they have decided to evaluate these free sources after a strict control.



- **Media Activism:** Media activism is a wide-ranging category of activism that makes use of media and communication technologies for social and political movements. Methods of media activism include bombarding the entire platform to publicise the matter. Using various platforms and publishing news on websites, creating video and audio investigations, spreading information about protests, or organising campaigns relating to media and communications policies.
- **Trial by Media:** Trial by media is a phrase popular in the late 20th century and 21st century to describe the impact of television and newspaper coverage on a person's reputation by creating a widespread perception of guilt or innocence before or after the verdict in a court of law.
- **Investigative Journalism:** Investigative journalism is one of the most controversial forms of the journalism field. Throughout history, this distinctive media specialty has affected many people in the political arena as well as the other members of society. The nature and magnitude of the impact of investigative reporting changed over time according to functions of the roles that it played. Sometimes investigative journalists played a mobilizing role by activating the public to take actions against wrongdoings, while other times they just set the agendas without any activation purpose.
- **Sting operations:** A Sting Operation is an operation designed to catch a person committing a crime by means of deception. A complicated confidence game planned and executed with great care. The word “sting” derives its origin from American usage to mean a police undercover operation designed to ensnare criminals. The word “sting” is a synonym for the expression “set a trap to catch a crook” and this article uses the term in that sense. In more refined terms, it can be called Investigative Journalism or Undercover Journalism.

16.8 KEYWORDS

Communication: The imparting or exchanging of information by speaking, writing, or using some other medium.

Journalism: Journalism is an activity of writing a news report or article for newspapers, magazines, or news websites or preparing news to be broadcast.



Social Media: *Social media* is based on information communication technology that facilitates the sharing of expressions, ideas, thoughts, and information through the building of virtual *networks* and communities.

16.9 SELF-ASSESSMENT TEST

1. What is participatory journalism?
2. Differentiate between participatory journalism and citizen journalism.
3. Describe the concept media activism.
4. What do you understand by trial by media? Explain it.
5. Describe the meaning and importance of investigative journalism.
6. Write a brief note on Sting operation.
7. Write short notes on the followings:
 - (a)Citizen Journalism
 - (b)Activism through Hashtag

16.10 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1. a) Citizen journalism is the gathering and reporting of news by the public.
2. c) They do not have formal training in journalism, and therefore do not understand the ethics and laws that are important in the field.
3. d) Social Media
4. a) Person's reputation
5. a) In-depth reporting that looks hard at one specific topic or subject

16.11 REFERENCES/ SUGGESTED READINGS

1. Bowcott, Owen (5 July 2011). "Contempt of court rules are designed to avoid trial by media".
The Guardian.



-
2. DelhiOctober 26, Asian News International New; October 26, 2019UPDATED:;Ist, 2019 12:34. "Complaint doubtful: Delhi court acquits Sarvjeet Singh in 2015 sexual harassment case". India Today. Retrieved 10 May 2020.
 3. Frey. Lawrence R.; Carragee. Kevin M.. Communication Activism. Publication Date: 2007
 4. Home. (n.d.). Retrieved from <https://www.investigative-manual.org/en/chapters/who-is-that-investigative-journalist/1-how-to-define-investigative-journalism/>
 5. Investigative Journalism. (2018, June 07). Retrieved from <https://en.unesco.org/investigative-journalism>
 6. JD Lasica. (2017, December 24). What is participatory journalism? Retrieved from <https://www.jdlasica.com/journalism/what-is-participatory-journalism/>
 7. "Legal News: News Hour with Jim Lehrer" (Transcript). Public Broadcasting System (PBS). 19 October 1998. Retrieved 12 March 2011.
 8. Napoli. Philip M., Aslama. Minna. Communications Research in Action: Scholar-Activist Collaboration For a Democratic Public Sphere. ISBN: 9780823233472. Publication Date: 2010-12-01
 9. Tunalioğulları, A. T. (2013, May 21). PARTICIPATORY/CITIZEN JOURNALISM. Retrieved from <http://iletisim.ieu.edu.tr/flows/?p=12564> Years After Fighting The JasleenKaur Case, Sarvjeet Singh Bedi Has Finally Been Acquitted". [indiatimes.com](http://www.indiatimes.com). 25 October 2019. Retrieved 10 May 2020.



SUBJECT: REPORTING	
COURSE CODE: MSM-523-A	AUTHOR: DR. RAMESH KUMAR SHARMA
LESSON NO.: 17	VETTER: PROF. MANOJ DAYAL
JOURNALISM AND DEMOCRACY	

STRUCTURE

- 17.0 Learning Objectives
- 17.1 Introduction
- 17.2 Journalism and Democracy
- 17.3 Journalism and Development
- 17.4 Objectivity in Reporting
- 17.5 Yellow Journalism & Check Book Journalism
- 17.6 Changing Trends in Reporting
- 17.7 Precision Journalism
- 17.8 Check Your Progress
- 17.9 Summary
- 17.10 Keywords
- 17.11 Self-Assessment Test
- 17.12 Answers to Check Your Progress
- 17.13 References/ Suggested Readings

17.0 LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After going through this lesson, you will be able to:

- Understand the role of Journalism in Development and Democracy
- Explain the Objectivity in Reporting



- Know about the meaning & concept of Yellow Journalism & Check Book Journalism
- Describe the Precision Journalism
- Explore the Changing Trends in Reporting

17.1 INTRODUCTION

The right to freedom of speech expression is vital for democracy, as it facilitates the public to participate in the process of making decisions based on the free flow of information and ideas. In the absence of which, public at large would be incapable to make informed decisions.

Free and independent media is essential in democracy because it plays a key role in informing citizens about public affairs and monitoring the actions of government at all levels. An independent media is important so that reported facts, figures, and stories can be believed and trusted as the truth. When people get information from independent sources, they are persuaded to think decisively and form their own opinions, making independent media vital for any democracy.

The role of a watchdog media can be that of a protector or a guardian. The role of a watchdog as a guardian is to provide the citizens with information they must have “to prevent the abuse of power”, and to “warn citizens about those that are doing them harm”.

In this chapter, we will discuss how journalism plays a decisive role in shaping a healthy democracy. It will discuss how in the current scenario when it has been observed that the reigning governments in state as well as at the Centre, controls the flow of government advertisement to certain media houses, in order to usher their control. This practice has been in line of violation of the freedom of expression and an effort to force the media to toe the government’s line.

17.2 JOURNALISM AND DEMOCRACY

In any democratic set up, journalism has a vital role to play as it is the only way to strike a balance in the society and make the people aware about the exact functioning of the state and the other subjects which are governing them. The outcome of democracy and journalism is that it upholds news based on the widespread and accepted opinion of the majority, or the 'good judgment of the masses'. This differs



from authoritarian and totalitarian approaches, where everything is being controlled and is around an overbearing system. Journalism is often discussed in terms of its association to egalitarianism. But one's notion of democracy can persuade how one comprehends journalistic concepts. Journalism does more than keep us informed-journalism facilitates us as citizens to have our opinion heard in the power corridors and permits us to observe and regulate the sources of power that shape our lives.

In a democratic set up, the society as a whole enjoy the rights to free speech, assembly, human rights, the rule of law and other mechanisms to test out exploitation or mistreatment. It also takes in community awareness and societal harmony. Journalism in this environment has a unambiguous linkage with democracy, and is formed consequently. It also varies from country to country, in terms of being developed nations, developing nations and underdeveloped nations. The unrestricted and egalitarian approach of journalism should go beyond unwarranted market-driven approaches, sensationalism, and manipulation by capitalists.

The basic dilemma confronted by democratic set up is the unpredictability and predisposition of political culture and a biasness, which might not actually point toward definite opinion of the majority. Above all the control, using the government machinery also affects the smooth functioning of the system.

Taking a look at the international level, Stanford communication faculty James Hamilton and Jon Krosnick reflect on both the historic and current role of journalism in democratic set up and the complexities facing voters as they pass through the superfluity of information sources available in the current times.

According to James Hamilton, Professor of Communication at Stanford's School of Humanities and Sciences (H&S) and chair of the Department of Communication, in his recent book,

Democracy's Detectives: The Economics of Investigative Journalism, chronicles the impact of accountability reporting in the United States. He recently co-launched the Stanford Journalism and Democracy Initiative, a data-driven effort to help journalists find stories at a lower cost and to support local newsrooms exploring public interest issues and fighting against misinformation.



Jon Krosnick, who is professor of communication, in his research has focused on attitude formation, change and effects on the psychology of political behavior and on survey research methods. His recent work shows how the order of candidate names on ballots influences election results. In their findings between journalism and democracy, both the scholars have explained that how objectivity in journalism and media fragmentation are making voters' jobs harder than ever before.

Criticisms of the media can also have political mileages. Traditionally, attacks by politicians on the credibility of the media have been part of a conscious strategy to weaken the accountability function of journalism.

According to Krosnick, in recent years, we have seen a collapse of the notion that politically relevant facts can be discerned by news professionals, leaving voters uncertain about whether the messages communicated by those professionals can be trusted. US President Trump has played a major role in raising doubts about the authenticity of information conveyed by major news organisations.

In the Indian scenario, the Indian Constitution, while not mentioning the word "press", provides for "the right to freedom of speech and expression." Article 19(1)(a) of Indian Constitution says that all citizens have the right to freedom of speech and expression. Freedom of Speech and expression means the right to express one's own convictions and opinions freely by words of mouth, writing, printing, pictures or any other mode.

The fundamental right of the freedom of the media implicit in the freedom of speech and expression is essential for political liberty and proper functioning of democracy. Freedom of Press has perpetually been a cherished right in all democracies.

Indian media — particularly the private media — have been "free and liberated" throughout most of their history. However, in 2018-19, the Annual Index of Media Freedom brought out by Reporters Without Borders ranked India in the 140th position among 197 countries. This was a setback from the previous year, while Freedom House, a US-based NGO rated Indian media, in its current report, as 'Partially Free.'



We need to understand that there has been a continuous transformation in the nature of media being getting influenced by governments and other agencies. Being a commercial entity, they need to survive and thus they somewhat dependent on government for the support in terms of government advertising. Here is the biggest predicament in front of journalism as a whole: how to be relevant and survive, the influence of those in power and in ruling the government.

17.3 JOURNALISM AND DEVELOPMENT

Development means a positive change. It comprises economic, political, social change. It involves the quality of life and the mindsets/outlook of people. It is a continuous process and goal oriented. It indicates human progress and is directly associated with the technological/ scientific breakthroughs.

According to Mariam Webster definition, it is the act or process of growing or causing something to grow or become larger or more advanced: the act or process of creating something over a period of time and the state of being created or made more advanced

Cambridge Definition says that the process in which someone or something grows or changes and becomes more advanced.

As per Rostow Model, every society goes through five stages of development.

In the first stage is that of a traditional society. This is an agricultural economy of mainly subsistence farming, little of which is traded. The size of the capital stock is limited and of low quality resulting in very low labour productivity and little surplus output left to sell in domestic and overseas markets

In the Second stage, pre-conditions for take-off. Agriculture becomes more mechanised and more output is traded. Savings and investment grow although they are still a small percentage of national income (GDP). Some external funding is required - for example in the form of overseas aid or perhaps remittance incomes from migrant workers living overseas.

In the third stage: Take-off. Manufacturing industry assumes greater importance, although the number of industries remains small. Political and social institutions start to develop - external finance



may still be required. Savings and investment grow, perhaps to 15 percent of GDP. Agriculture assumes lesser importance in relative terms although the majority of people may remain employed in the farming sector. There is often a dual economy apparent with rising productivity and wealth in manufacturing and other industries contrasted with stubbornly low productivity and real incomes in rural agriculture.

In the fourth stage: Drive to maturity. Industry becomes more diverse. Growth should spread to different parts of the country as the state of technology improves - the economy moves from being dependent on factor inputs for growth towards making better use of innovation to bring about increases in real per capita incomes

The fifth stage is 'age of mass consumption'. Output levels grow, enabling increased consumer expenditure. There is a shift towards tertiary sector activity and the growth is sustained by the expansion of a middle class of consumers.

Journalists also have a huge representational role. In a mass society, there is always a crisis of representation as countries tend to be too big to hover up all opinions as feedback for establishments. Political leaders cannot speak for all interests and concerns; they have to, by necessity, pander to some and ignore others. And even if they do, their impact is linked to political stature rather than the rightness of their cause. Journalists, on the contrary, try and course through society and make contact with as many constituencies as possible and relate the views of the ignored to the wider public

Here is how James D. Wolfensohn, president of the World Bank, describes the importance of the journalist's work:

“What differentiates poor people from rich people, is lack of voice. The inability to be represented. The inability to convey to the people in authority what it is they think. The inability to have a searchlight put on the conditions of inequality.

“A free press is absolutely vital to that objective. Freedom of the press is not a luxury. It is not an extra. It is absolutely at the core of equitable development.”



First let me discuss the problem of unlimited producers of information that itself conceals two challenges for journalism in the public interest—an economic challenge and content challenge.

The economic challenge affects even the largest and most powerful news organizations. As these organizations compete in a worldwide market the pressure to maximize profit and minimize costs has led to short-term decisions that threaten to undermine their ability to do quality work.

17.4 OBJECTIVITY IN REPORTING

Journalistic objectivity is a considerable notion within the discussion of journalistic professionalism. Journalistic objectivity may refer to fairness, disinterestedness, factuality, and nonpartisanship, but most often encompasses all of these qualities. First evolving as a practice in the 18th century, a number of critiques and alternatives to the notion have emerged since, fuelling ongoing and dynamic discourse surrounding the ideal of objectivity in journalism.

Objectivity in journalism aims to help the audience make up their own mind about a story, providing the facts alone and then letting audiences interpret those on their own. To maintain objectivity in journalism, journalists should present the facts whether or not they like or agree with those facts. Objective reporting is meant to portray issues and events in a neutral and unbiased manner, regardless of the writer's opinion or personal beliefs

The media has flaws like any human institution. Journalists have biases, blind spots, prejudices, delusions of self-importance and, in many cases, they work for institutions that have complex motivations that constrain them. But they also work in a competitive climate where the fear of being challenged by peers has the overall effect of elevating reporting standards, which in turn helps readers to separate the great from the good and the avoidable. Unlike some sectors, the media has some self-correcting conventions which it is able to implement in real time.

The industry has its blemishes, but they should not detract from the fact that it is an institution which is critical for democracy. Journalists try and keep a track of how a society is evolving and how it talks to itself. They attempt to keep a watch on power, its practices, deceptions and effects and are expected to be attentive to the tribulations of the weak. The media are the society's eyes and ears. They



speak to people's concerns more often than political leaders are willing or able to. Two conclusions follow from this: Journalists should mainly be judged by how they try and practice these principles. Second, governments have a vested interest in taming the media to cover up their failings and excesses. Citizens must be constantly aware that intimidating journalists is part of an attempt to silence all.

These steps may seem too troublesome to some. But the cost of ignoring them and risking corruption of the information and knowledge we provide the public is too great. For how journalism progresses and how democracy progresses will depend upon how well we discharge this responsibility.

Time and again history has taught us the heavy price we pay when the independence, aggressive vigilance, accuracy and credibility of the press fails.

Taking example of the United States in the Iraq War, who can say how the decision by the American government—with the support of a majority of the American public—to invade Iraq may turn out—only time will tell. But one thing we do know for certain is that the public support for that decision was built by the government's creation of a virtual world of an imminent threat that did not exist. And brick by brick the construction of that deceptive virtual world was aided by an American press that did not rigorously enforce an independent journalism of verification.

The first publications we would recognise as modern newspapers developed in Western Europe in the early 17th century and made public opinion possible. Before those early publications there was no common base of information upon which a public opinion could form.

The voice of the people was a babble—unheard and unimportant in the councils of government. Without their steady, reliable flow of timely information the creation, maturation and continuation of a public opinion as a force in politics would not have occurred—self-government would not have occurred. Journalism and self-government were born together. Journalism and self-government will rise or fall together.

We need to remember each day we go to work to let the public know that we know it is because of this special role a journalist plays in our shared society that we also have a special responsibility.



If we are to effectively pursue the independence that our work requires, it is important that the public understand and accept our role as a valid one and one vital to their own interests. The only way to assure that in this world of unlimited competition for the public mind is for the journalist to act with the responsibility their independence requires.

For all of us and for our continued freedom in a dangerous, anarchical world depends upon not forgetting the past—not forgetting the values that have made self-government possible. For, in the end, if history teaches us anything it teaches us that freedom and democracy do not depend upon technology or upon the most efficient organisation.

Freedom and democracy depend upon individuals who refuse to give up their belief that the free flow of timely, truthful information is what has made freedom, self-government and human dignity possible.

17.5 YELLOW JOURNALISM & CHEQUE BOOK JOURNALISM

Exaggeration of facts and malicious reporting can be labeled as Yellow Journalism. It is mostly presenting little or no rightful, well-researched news while instead using interest generating headlines for catching eyes and leading to increase in commercial gains. The techniques may include exaggerations of facts, scandal-mongering, or sensationalism.

Yellow journalism, the phrase was coined in the 1890s to describe the tactics employed in the furious competition between two New York City newspapers, the World and the Journal.

Joseph Pulitzer had purchased the New York World in 1883 and, using colourful, sensational reporting and crusades against political corruption and social injustice, had won the largest newspaper circulation in the country. His supremacy was challenged in 1895 when William Randolph Hearst, the son of a California mining tycoon, moved into New York City and bought the rival Journal. Hearst, who had already built the San Francisco Examiner into a hugely successful mass-circulation paper, soon made it plain that he intended to do the same in New York City by outdoing his competitors in sensationalism, crusades, and Sunday features. He brought in some of his staff from San Francisco and hired some away from Pulitzer's paper, including Richard F. Outcault, a cartoonist who had drawn an



immensely popular comic picture series, The Yellow Kid, for the Sunday World. After Outcault's defection, the comic was drawn for the World by George B. Luks, and the two rival picture series excited so much attention that the competition between the two newspapers came to be described as "yellow journalism." This all-out rivalry and its accompanying promotion developed large circulations for both papers and affected American journalism in many cities.

The era of yellow journalism may be said to have ended shortly after the turn of the 20th century, with the World's gradual retirement from the competition in sensationalism. Some techniques of the yellow journalism period, however, became more or less permanent and widespread, such as banner headlines, coloured comics, and copious illustration. In other media, most notably television and the Internet, many of the sensationalist practices of yellow journalism became more commonplace.

Once the term had been coined, it extended to the sensationalist style employed by the two publishers in their profit-driven coverage of world events, particularly developments in Cuba. Cuba had long been a Spanish colony and the revolutionary movement, which had been simmering on and off there for much of the 19th century, intensified during the 1890s. Many in the United States called upon Spain to withdraw from the island, and some even gave material support to the Cuban revolutionaries. Hearst and Pulitzer devoted more and more attention to the Cuban struggle for independence, at times accentuating the harshness of Spanish rule or the nobility of the revolutionaries, and occasionally printing rousing stories that proved to be false. This sort of coverage, complete with bold headlines and creative drawings of events, sold a lot of papers for both publishers.

The rise of yellow journalism helped to create a climate conducive to the outbreak of international conflict and the expansion of U.S. influence overseas, but it did not by itself cause the war. In spite of Hearst's often quoted statement—"You furnish the pictures, I'll provide the war!"—other factors played a greater role in leading to the outbreak of war. The papers did not create anti-Spanish sentiments out of thin air, nor did the publishers fabricate the events to which the U.S. public and politicians reacted so strongly. Moreover, influential figures such as Theodore Roosevelt led a drive for U.S. overseas expansion that had been gaining strength since the 1880s. Nevertheless, yellow journalism of this period is significant to the history of U.S. foreign relations in that its centrality to the history of the Spanish American War shows that the press had the power to capture the attention of a



large readership and to influence public reaction to international events. The dramatic style of yellow journalism contributed to creating public support for the Spanish-American War, a war that would ultimately expand the global reach of the United States.

In India, this kind of journalism has emerged in last two decades. There are many such examples to cite: media coverage of Arushi Talwar's murder, Love Jihad, and a recent the case of Indian cricketer Mohammed Shami. These all along with other cases were subjected to the media trial.

Last year, a couple of two different religion (Hadiya Case) in Kerala went on marrying, the media stamped that case with Love Jihad. Majority of the media houses started media trial of that couple and exaggerated the facts and figures.

The JNU controversy went around exaggerating the facts, false and bias reporting. Ethical and moral grounds of reporting were crushed by many media houses. The Indian media, in this case, was framing and overdramatizing the events and played with the sentiments of the people. Media trial happened here too.

If we take a close look upon the patter of the coverage it boils down to the three major points:

Firstly, the media is shifting its intention from public issues that can lead to change in society to the only intention of gaining TRP.

Journalism being the fourth pillar of democracy- a constituent for spreading the facts and the truth. Taken from the Mundaka Upanishad, 'Satyameva Jayate', which means truth alone triumphs finds its place in the national emblem of the great country that India is. But, this fourth pillar of democracy is finding it extremely difficult to realise its moment of truth.

17.6 CHANGING TRENDS IN REPORTING

News reporting is the basic professional obligation of journalists and media houses. Every media entity is in existence in order to further role of news reporting to concerned target groups.



News as a communication is based on selected information on current issues and happenings which is further presented by various media.

Right from the time it started as a profession, news reporting has completely transformed.

As soon as India got freedom in 1947, the government of India followed language-based newspapers for propagating their policies and harboured them by giving them advertising revenue. These newspapers were mostly started as a mission and contributed big during the freedom struggle movement.

In the post-independence era, although the Constitution did not make any distinctive reference to the word 'media' or 'press', the compelling debates amongst the founding fathers of Constitution ascertained that the press would play a pivotal role even without having its specific mention. The freedom of expression was well-established for the civil society of the country and was also endorsed by the Supreme Court of India in 1950 while deciding upon the question of pre censorship of press.

In the current times, with the advent of technological up gradation, there has been a complete revamped news reporting and business of news reporting.

While in democracy, journalism has a significant role to play. But, the hidden agenda behind the news business, being controlled by business houses as well as political parties in power, has completely changed the meaning of news reporting all together.

A recent investigative documentary on Netflix - 'The Social Dilemma' presents the dark underbelly of Silicon Valley as it fuses investigative eye-openers about vested interests of these social media platforms, which is controlling things at global level too. Expert testimony from tech whistle-blowers exposes our disturbing predicament: the services Big Tech provides-search engines, networks, instant information, etc.-are merely the candy that lures us to bite. Once we're hooked and coming back for more, the real commodity they sell is their prowess to influence and manipulate us.



Facebook owner Mark Zuckerberg had pledged to ‘fix Facebook’ and a huge amount of engineering resource has been deployed, fact-checking and media literacy programmes have been funded, along with support for local journalism in some countries.

Facebook, Twitter, and YouTube have all spent increasing amounts of money on taking down content and targeting ‘bad actors’ and even extending the definition of unacceptable content. In this respect, the banning of Info-Wars, first by Apple and then by other platforms marked a major shift in approach. But the scale and complexity of the task ahead is immense.

Every now and then new problems are emerging – a bit like a game of ‘whack-a-mole’. By July the crisis spread to WhatsApp with false rumours about child abduction in India leading to a series of lynchings. In Brazil, a co-ordinated disinformation campaign on WhatsApp played a part in the rise to power of far-right leader, Jair Bolsonaro. And by the end of the year attention had switched back to Facebook, where hundreds of self-organising ‘anger groups’ laid out their demands and organised destructive ‘Gilets Jaunes’ protests across France.

How changing trends in media is affecting journalism as a whole:

- The social media habit and sharing-as-distribution.
- The shift to mobile devices and on mobile to apps.
- New business models for news.
- Going beyond the usual method of generating audience to sell subscriptions and ads, including:
- Capturing data to better target ads and personalise products.
- Organising Events: leveraging a news brand into convening power.
- Native advertising and the agency model
- Crowd funding and membership



- Analytics in news production: Learning from audience behavior without becoming enslaved to the numbers.
- The “product” focus in news companies. Bringing technology, editorial, business and user experience together.
- Data journalism. In all senses: collecting data sets, connecting to data through Artificial Intelligence, data visualisation, finding stories in the data, making cleaned-up and searchable databases available to users, sensors in news work.
- Continuous improvement in content management systems and thus in work flow.
- Structured data. To capture more value from the routine production of news.
- Personalization in news products.
- Transparency and trust.
- Open journalism Including: the verification of user-generated content, networked journalism, crowd sourcing, and social media as reporting tool.
- Automation and “robot journalism.”
- Creating an agile culture in newsrooms. So that adaptation, collaboration and experiment are not such an ordeal.
- The personal franchise model in news.
- News verticals and niche journalism.
- The future of context and explainer journalism. Providing the background needed to understand the updates.
- “News as a service.” Rather than a product appearing on the news company’s schedule, a service that helps a user do something.



- From scarcity to abundance. Used to be that journalists added value by publishing new material. Sometimes called news curation.
- Fact-checking and rumour control. Dealing with false information and not letting it through the gate.

17.7 PRECISION JOURNALISM

Instead of gatekeepers, journalists now become referees. Acknowledging that our potential audience is flooded with unlimited information and no way of discerning what is of value, what is true, what is propaganda, we must construct our work to offer them the referee's advice: this information has been checked and verified; this information has been found to be untrue; this is self-interested propaganda; this is being reported but we have yet to be able to verify the information.

Recognizing these new responses to help consumer construct their own news package, will require us to be as focused and as constant as the challenges we face—but they have to begin with a more professional approach to our journalism—an approach that instills in each journalist a rigorous method of testing information so that personal, commercial and political biases do not undermine the accuracy of their work.

As Machiavelli said, institutions in order to survive in times of change must return to their roots. For journalists of public interest that means reaching back to the original goal of 18th century thinkers that journalist's pursuit of truthful information be guided by a more scientific, transparent methodology of verification—a methodology that checks every assertion against the record; that asks of every claim, “How do you know that?”; that demonstrates the source of every fact.

Such painstaking verification is vital in an information environment richer than the world has ever seen.

And since our survival in this atmosphere depends upon our holding the public's trust we must build a more transparent relationship with our audience.



This fundamental idea of transparency is simple: never deceive your audience. Tell them what you know and what you don't know. Tell them who your sources are and if you can't name the sources tell them how the sources are in a position to know and what biases, if any, they may have. In other words, provide your information so that people see how it was developed and can make up their own minds what to think.

And be sure that transparency lets the public see we have kept an open mind—open not only about what we hear but about our ability to understand. Some call this humility. We call it open-mindedness. Don't assume. Avoid an arrogance about your knowledge and be sure you submit your own assumptions to your process of verification.

For as I said before, journalism must be an act of character. An act built on the authority, honesty and judgment of the people. When people decide what news to buy, or what news to watch, or what magazine to purchase, they are making a decision about the judgment, the character, and the values of the journalists who have produced that news.

In many ways those values are revealed every day when we decide what we cover and how we cover it—and what we don't cover.

The people today have grown more skeptical—even cynical—about all the conflicting information that pours over them in forms that look like journalism. Society gives journalists a certain degree of access, status and autonomy but in return expects the irreplaceable service news of issues, characters and institutions that affect their lives and their communities in a disinterested rather than in a selfish manner.

Our unwavering commitment to maintaining the public trust and making sense of the flood of information available today is the only way journalism can retain the economic base to assure its survival.

We cannot meet these obligations unless we consciously create a newsroom culture that rewards critical thinking and discourages and exposes dishonest behavior.



Such a culture begins with a new focus on these issues by editors. One unrecognized impact of the new competitive atmosphere has been to draw editors more deeply into management of the newsroom at the expense of the more critical jobs of editing and mentoring young journalists.

Editors must develop more mechanisms of quality that place responsibility for the credibility on each person in the newsroom: after-the-fact quality control such as analyzing complaints of errors or questions of assertions and analysis; mechanisms like ombudsmen or public editors who engage directly with the public.

But beyond these mechanisms we need to build into the newsroom culture forward-looking quality assurance practices similar to those practiced by doctors in the best teaching hospitals. In these hospitals every time there is a negative outcome of a doctor-patient interaction the doctor involved appears at a meeting with other staff members at which each step in the procedure is open for examination and criticism-criticism not so much aimed at finding fault, but to learn from the mistakes. Every mistake or omission in our newsrooms should become another learning experience and another opportunity to remind every journalist of their personal responsibility.

17.8 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1- The right to freedom of expression is vital for democracy.

- a) True
- b) False

2- Criticisms of the media can also have political mileages.

- a) True
- b) False

3- Which Article of Indian Constitution says that all citizens have the right to freedom of speech and expression?

- a) 19 (a)
- b) 19 (1) (a)



c) 19 (1) (b)

4- As per Rostow Model, every society goes through of development.

- a) Three
- b) Five
- c) Four
- d) Two

5- Joseph Pulitzer had purchased the New York World in

- a) 1890
- b) 1883
- c) 1838
- d) 1879

17.9 SUMMARY

- The right to expression is vital for the functioning of a democratic set up, as it fosters electorates to participate in decision making based on informed choices. In the absence of freedom of expression people will not be capable of making erudite decisions.
- Independent media is imperative in democracy for the reason that it updates citizens about socio-political conditions and alacrity of government on all accounts. An independent media is important so that reported facts, figures, and stories can be believed and trusted as the truth.
- When people get information from independent sources, they are persuaded to think decisively and form their own opinions, making independent media vital for any democracy.
- Media's role as a watchdog can be that of a protector or a guardian, in order to provide the citizens with information they must have 'to avert the abuse of power', and to 'caution citizens about those who are doing them harm'.



- The transformation in journalism can be observed as an affirmative advancement. It has propelled all to be innovative, and to formulate new business models in order to prevail.

17.10 KEYWORDS

Democracy: Democracy is a structure of government in which the common people or every citizen of country has the authority to choose their governing legislation.

Development Journalism: Development journalism is a kind of reporting and writing that related to the process of economic development.

Social media: Social media is a internet based medium that provide the creation or sharing of information via virtual communities and networks.

Yellow Journalism: Yellow journalism is specific type of reporting and writing that emphasized sensationalism over facts.

Infodemic: Infodemic is an unnecessary quantity of information on specific topic or subject that is usually defective, spreads rapidly, and makes a way out more difficult to achieve.

17.11 SELF-ASSESSMENT TEST

1. What are the main differences when debating the merit of journalism's professional objective model?
2. How journalism as a discipline approach the concern of neutrality when covering stories on topics in which certain simple or complex facts are in dispute by different parties?
3. Do you agree or disagree that objectivity is possible to achieve? If not, do you see any value in attempting it anyway?
4. What are the risks of maintaining an ideal of objectivity, and what are the risks of giving it up?
5. Discuss your opinion on Changing Trends in Reporting with support to suitable example.



-
6. Write a difference between Yellow Journalism & Check Book Journalism.
 7. What do you mean by precision journalism?

17.12 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1. a) True
2. a) True
3. b) 19 (1) (a)
4. b) Five
5. b) 1883

17.13 REFERENCES/ SUGGESTED READINGS

1. A roundup of trends that are changing journalism. (n.d.). Retrieved October 10, 2020, from <https://ijnet.org/en/story/roundup-trends-are-changing-journalism>
2. Journalists Are Essential to a Democracy. A Few Blemishes Shouldn't Mean We Forget That. (n.d.). Retrieved October 10, 2020, from <https://thewire.in/culture/media-journalism-democracy>
3. Luo, M., Halpern, S., Lepore, J., Bethea, C., & Taylor, A. (n.d.). How Can the Press Best Serve a Democratic Society? Retrieved October 10, 2020, from <https://www.newyorker.com/news/the-future-of-democracy/how-can-the-press-best-serve-democracy>
4. The Editors of Encyclopaedia Britannica. "Yellow Journalism." *Encyclopædia Britannica*, Encyclopædia Britannica, Inc., 25 Oct. 2019, www.britannica.com/topic/yellow-journalism.
5. The Hindu. "Investing in Democracy - How Can We Fund Journalism in Order to Save It?" *The Hindu*, The Hindu, 18 Aug. 2020, www.thehindu.com/thread/politics-and-policy/investing-in-democracy-how-can-we-fund-journalism-in-order-to-save-it/article32379593.ece.



-
6. University, S. (2020, September 23). Journalism and democracy. Retrieved October 10, 2020, from <https://news.stanford.edu/2020/02/27/journalism-and-democracy/>
 7. *U.S. Department of State*, U.S. Department of State, history.state.gov/milestones/1866-1898/yellow-journalism. (n.d.). Retrieved October 10, 2020, from <https://history.state.gov/milestones/1866-1898/yellow-journalism>



NOTES